



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

LATIN PROSE EXERCISES

R. PROWDE SMITH

RIVINGTONS

Select Plays of Shakspeare

RUGBY EDITION. With an Introduction and Notes to each Play. Small 8vo.

As You Like It. 2s. ; paper cover, 1s. 6d.

Edited by the Rev. Charles E. Moberly, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford.

Macbeth. 2s. ; paper cover, 1s. 6d.

Edited by the same.

Coriolanus. 2s. 6d. ; paper cover, 2s.

Edited by Robert Whitelaw, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

Hamlet. 2s. 6d. ; paper covers, 2s.

Edited by the Rev. Charles E. Moberly, M.A.

The Tempest.

[In preparation.]

Edited by J. Surtees Phillpotts, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford.

Much Ado about Nothing.

[In preparation.]

Edited by the same.

* * Other Plays are in Preparation.

Scenes from Greek Plays

RUGBY EDITION. Abridged and Adapted for the use of Schools, by Arthur Sidgwick, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, and formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

Aristophanes.

THE CLOUDS. THE FROGS. THE KNIGHTS. PLUTUS.

Euripides.

IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. THE CYCLOPS. ION.

ELECTRA.

Small 8vo. 1s. 6d. each ; paper cover, 1s.

* * Other Plays are in Preparation.

• Rivingtons • London • Oxford • Cambridge •

Catena Classicorum

A Series of Classical Authors. Edited by Members of both Universities, under the Direction of the Rev. Arthur Holmes, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall; and the Rev. Charles Bigg, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.

Sophoclis Tragoediae.

THE ELECTRA, 3s. 6d. THE AJAX, 3s. 6d.

Edited by E. C. Jebb, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Public Orator of the University.

Juvenalis Satirae.

Edited by G. A. Simcox, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer of Queen's College, Oxford. New Edition, revised. 5s.

Thucydidis Historia.

Edited by Chas. Bigg, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.

Books I. and II., with Introductions. 6s.

Demosthenis Orationes Publicae.

THE OLYNTHIACS, 2s. 6d. THE PHILIPPICS, 3s. DE
FALSA LEGATIONE, 6s.

Edited by G. H. Heslop, M.A., late Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford; Head Master of St. Bees.

Aristophanis Comoediae.

THE ACHARNIANS and THE KNIGHTS, 4s. THE
CLOUDS, 3s. 6d. THE WASPS, 3s. 6d.

Edited by W. C. Green, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master at Rugby School.
An Edition of THE ACHARNIANS and THE KNIGHTS, Revised and especially adapted for Use in Schools. 4s.

Isocratis Orationes.

AD DEMONICUM ET PANEGRICUM, 4s. 6d.

Edited by John Edwin Sandys, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Classical Lecturer at Jesus College, Cambridge.

Persii Satirae.

Edited by A. Pretor, M.A., Fellow of St. Catherine's College, Cambridge, Classical Lecturer of Trinity Hall. 3s. 6d.

Homeri Ilias.

Edited by S. H. Reynolds, M.A., late Fellow and Tutor of Brasenose College, Oxford. Books I. to XII. 6s.

Terenti Comoediae.

ANDRIA ET EUNUCHUS, 4s. 6d.

Edited by T. L. Papillon, M.A., Fellow of New College, Oxford, late Fellow of Merton.

Demosthenis Orationes.

DE CORONA, 5s.

Edited by the Rev. Arthur Holmes, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall.

Herodoti Historia.

Edited by H. G. Woods, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Oxford.
Book I. 6s. Book II. 5s.

• Rivingtons • London • Oxford • Cambridge •



600096206T

LATIN PROSE EXERCISES

R I V I N G T O N S

London	.	.	.	.	.	<i>Waterloo Place</i>
Oxford	.	.	.	.	.	<i>High Street</i>
Cambridge	.	.	.	.	.	<i>Trinity Street</i>

LATIN PROSE EXERCISES

*FOR BEGINNERS AND JUNIOR FORMS
OF SCHOOLS*

BY

R. PROWDE SMITH, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT CHELTENHAM COLLEGE.

THIRD EDITION



RIVINGTONS

London, Oxford, and Cambridge

MDCCCLXXV

305 . 9 . 72 .

PREFACE.

MOST masters will admit that boys experience difficulty in elementary Latin Composition principally from not understanding the structure of their own language. They commence Latin at an early age without any knowledge of English Grammar, for it is assumed that this will grow upon them during their study of Latin; and they spend years in endeavouring to apply certain rules which they learn by heart, without being led to perceive that the grammatical value of most words must be the same, whatever be the language employed. Now none of the exercise books at present in use seems to recognize this deficiency; they are all adapted rather for men who have commenced the study of Latin late in life than for the boys for whom they are actually intended. The result is that, whatever be the dubious gain in mental discipline, as far as the acquisition of knowledge is concerned a considerable period of a boy's early life is practically wasted. In many instances, success is attained at last, not so much through any assistance derived from the teacher, as because repeated examples have at length forced themselves upon the observation of the learner, and enabled him unconsciously to form a system for himself.

Now it appears that a great deal of trouble and vexation might be saved even to a clever boy, if his observation were directed aright from the beginning. If he were made to parse his English sentences before turning them into Latin, he would soon perceive that certain fixed principles pervade both languages;

and he would be pleased to find that, in his practical knowledge of his mother tongue, he already possesses an unsuspected fund of information, which will enable him to master any language to which he turns his attention.

The object of this book, then, is to teach Latin Composition and English Grammar simultaneously, in full confidence that the acquisition of the former will be found much easier when it is approached through routes which turn out on inspection to be already familiar. In accordance with this object, words and phrases have been dealt with only as they form parts of complete sentences ; and before these are turned into Latin, the grammatical significance of each word in the English is required to be carefully pointed out, and the sentence analyzed, as indicated in the body of the book. This system has undergone the test of experience for several years, and has always been found to work successfully.

When a boy has once acquired the art of analyzing correctly he may for the most part be spared the trouble in future, for the analysis is only, as it were, the crutch to teach him to walk, and will but impede the rapidity of his progress, when he has learned to do without it. But when it appears that a boy has misunderstood the construction in any particular passage, or if the clauses appear to have been too involved for his right apprehension of them, let him proceed to analyze the sentence for himself, and it will be found that the mistakes will then often be corrected without a master's assistance.

It is suggested that a clause which is likely to present any difficulty should always be analyzed, for boys ought to receive timely warning of the pitfalls in their way. Some masters seem to think it their special function to convict their pupils of ignorance, and even begin by regarding their inevitable success with a sort of grim satisfaction ; but they soon find that

if they only give a boy a fair chance he is sure to go wrong, and, strange as it may appear, he is the more likely to fail again in the same place. No one, who has not found it out for himself, would believe how difficult it is to prevent a boy from stumbling again, if he has once been suffered to fall at any point. He has been allowed to reason himself into a wrong opinion, and is in the position of the man convinced against his will; unknown it may be even to himself, he remains of the same opinion still. Repeated correction of errors is not the best way of imparting accuracy; in this, as in most other instances, prevention is the best cure.

This book is intended primarily for boys who have only mastered the accidence, and have begun to understand such distinctions as that which exists between the active and passive voices of a verb, and perhaps also such easy constructions as the agreement of a verb with its subject, and of an adjective with its substantive, but it will also be found useful for boys much more advanced; and the application of the system to an English lesson, as suggested at the end of Part II., will be found a useful exercise for boys of almost any age.

The teaching of Composition on this plan may be advantageously combined with lessons in construing at sight on the same principle. Thus, if a boy is in doubt how to commence any sentence, let him look for the principal verb, just as he is in the habit of doing in English, and then for its subject; when he has construed these, he may be made to close his book, and say what construction he expects to follow, and it will be found that in most instances he will be able to predict exactly what he must look for. It is a good plan for the master to give the meaning of the words, when the boy has selected those which he intends to construe. This method is much preferable to confining the attention of the class to a few lines prepared over-night.

It brings out a boy's intelligence, and prevents him from depending on his companions: moreover it is possible to get over a considerable amount of ground in this way, and thus, besides facility gained in translation, opportunity is afforded of becoming interested in the author, and Cæsar is no longer regarded merely as a repository of "ablative absolutes," or Livy of "oratio obliqua."

There is one more point to which it is desirable to call attention. It will generally be acknowledged that there is a great advantage in instituting comparisons between different languages which a class may be learning simultaneously; but this too often degenerates into calling attention merely to similar words or roots. In the present work care has been taken rather to point out like phrases, and corresponding or diverse modes of expressing the same thing, than to indicate mere words common to two or more languages. The words will be observed in most cases by the boys themselves with little assistance as they get older, while, from the want of interest they excite, they are soon forgotten by younger boys; but even a beginner is struck by such a difference of expression as the English *I have a fever*, and the Greek *the fever has me*, or by the different modes of expressing two consecutive actions in Greek, Latin, and English. The first mentioned branch of comparative philology is not of course without great value, but it is too frequently made entirely to exclude the latter. It is no bad exercise to tell a short anecdote, and make a boy tell you the same story as well as he can in English, using Latin or Greek idioms as the case may be. Of course his immediate aim will be to make it look as much like a translation as possible, and he will often succeed very fairly in imitating the style of the author he is engaged in reading.

One word with regard to the arrangement of the subject-matter. Attention is first directed to the verb, as containing

the leading idea in each sentence, and all other parts of the sentence are introduced as attending on the verb. The simplest and most general form of sentence is taken to be a transitive verb with its subject and object. The different forms which the subject, verb, and object may assume are then pointed out, and in the examples appended there are abundant opportunities of inculcating the simpler case constructions.

It has not been thought advisable to discuss co-ordinate clauses; they may always be treated as separate sentences linked on by conjunctions, and will present no difficulty.

The verb "to be" has been treated as anomalous in its construction. This, it is thought, will need no apology, when it is remembered that even now tribes of speaking men exist, who have not arrived at the power of abstraction necessary to produce this particular verb. The subdivision of a sentence into subject, copula, and predicate, however ingenious it may be, is of no practical assistance to any one in acquiring a new language, or in studying the elements of his own; and it bears much the same relation, perhaps, to language, that the theory of numbers does to arithmetic.

The chapter on Questions naturally occupies a place just after that on the Relative Clause; this, of course, is owing to the similarity between relative and interrogative words, but it is by no means clear that this is the place in which it would best be introduced to the notice of a beginner. The same remarks apply to the chapter on Correlatives. It is possible that, in the endeavour to conform to existing methods of explanation, the chapter on Indirect Commands is not arranged in so simple a manner as it might otherwise have been, but it is not apprehended that any real difficulty will be found with this part of the subject. Great care has been taken to make the explanations as short as is consistent with completeness.

Examples have been added, to make the book more useful for school work, but these are not regarded as an essential part of it; examples may be taken from any exercise book already in use.

In Part III. will be found a short explanation of the more ordinary case constructions, with numerous examples. These constructions are in all cases compared with the corresponding English usage; and, as in the other parts of the book, a boy is led to base his progress on the knowledge he already possesses. He will approach this part of the subject, it is believed, from an entirely new point of view, and will gain all the advantage which usually results from various methods of learning the same thing. Should the arrangement of this part of the volume not meet with the approbation of individual masters, it is hoped that the examples will yet be found of service, as they can in all cases be used in connexion with the syntax as laid down in most of the Latin Grammars in general use.

The chapters on "Qui" with the Subjunctive, the Gerundive, and the Past Participle, have been added as corollaries, so to speak, on chapters in the earlier portion of the book.

In conclusion, the aim of this work is to combine English parsing with Latin Composition, beginning from the simplest sentences, and gradually passing on to the more complex forms of expression. It is believed that in this way much more rapid progress can be made than is generally supposed; more interest will be inspired into what will at best be but a dry study, it is feared, for beginners; and this at least is certain, that we shall not have the dull boys growing up, as at present, entirely ignorant of English Grammar, through inability to apply the principles they have learnt only in connexion with a language they never understood.

R. PROWDE SMITH.

Cheltenham.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT	1
II. THE DIRECT OBJECT	2
EXAMPLES	4
III. WORDS USED TO QUALIFY OR DESCRIBE SUBSTANTIVES	6
(a.) ADJECTIVES	6
EXAMPLES	7
(b.) APPPOSITION	8
EXAMPLES	9
(c.) THE GENITIVE CASE	10
EXAMPLES	11
IV. WORDS USED TO QUALIFY VERBS AND ADJECTIVES	12
V. THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT	13
EXAMPLES	14
VI. THE VERB "TO BE"	15
EXAMPLES	15
VII. THE PRELATE INFINITIVE	16
EXAMPLES	18
VIII. VERBS OF ASKING AND TEACHING	19
EXAMPLES	20
IX. THE DATIVE OF THE REMOTE OBJECT	21
EXAMPLES	22
X. THE VERB-NOUN INFINITIVE	22
EXAMPLES	24
XI. THE VERB-NOUN INFINITIVE (<i>continued</i>)	24
XII. EXAMPLES	25
MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES	27

PART II.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. THE RELATIVE CLAUSE	32
EXAMPLES	35
II. CORRELATIVES	37
EXAMPLES	39
III. QUESTIONS	40
EXAMPLES	41
IV. INDIRECT OR OBLIQUE SENTENCES	42
INDIRECT ENUNCIATION	42
EXAMPLES	45
V. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	47
EXAMPLES	48
VI. INDIRECT COMMANDS	50
EXAMPLES	51
VII. SPEECHES	53
EXAMPLES OF SPEECHES TO BE TRANSFORMED INTO	
"ORATIO OBLIQUA"	57
VIII. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	61
EXAMPLES	63
IX. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES	65
X. ENGLISH POETRY ANALYZED	67
XI. LATIN PROSE ANALYZED	71
XII. MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES	74

PART III.

CASE CONSTRUCTIONS AND IDIOMS.

I. THE ABLATIVE CASE	90
EXAMPLES	92
II. PLACE AND NAMES OF TOWNS	99
EXAMPLES	101
III. TIME	103
EXAMPLES	103

CONTENTS.

xiii

CHAP.	PAGE
IV. ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF RESPECT	106
EXAMPLES	106
V. QUALITY	107
EXAMPLES	108
VI. DIMENSIONS OF TIME AND LENGTH	110
EXAMPLES	111
VII. VERBS GOVERNING AN ABLATIVE	112
EXAMPLES	118
VIII. "OPUS" AND "USUS"	118
EXAMPLES	114
IX. COMPARISON	114
EXAMPLES	115
X. THE GENITIVE WITH "DUTY" OR "TOKEN" UNDERSTOOD	117
EXAMPLES	117
XI. THE GENITIVE OF THE THING MEASURED	118
EXAMPLES	118
XII. THE GENITIVE PROLATIVE AND OBJECTIVE	120
EXAMPLES	120
XIII. "DIGNUS" AND COGNATE WORDS	123
EXAMPLES	123
XIV. THE DATIVE CASE	124
EXAMPLES	124
XV. VERBS GOVERNING A DATIVE	127
EXAMPLES	128
XVI. THE DATIVE OF THE COMPLEMENT	130
EXAMPLES	130
XVII. PARTICULAR USE OF THE VERB "SUM" WITH THE DATIVE	132
EXAMPLES	133
XVIII. THE GERUNDIVE	133
EXAMPLES	134
XIX. "QUI" WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE	136
EXAMPLES	137
XX. THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE	139
EXAMPLES	140
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	143
PROPER NAMES	174

PART I.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

THE VERB AND ITS SUBJECT.

EVERY sentence contains at least a verb and its subject. The verb (with one exception *) states what a thing does or suffers, e. g.

(i.) The stars shine.

(ii.) Romulus slew Remus.

(iii.) Pompey was defeated by Cæsar.

^A In (i.) *shine* is the verb stating what the stars do.

In (ii.) *slew* is the verb stating what Romulus did.

In (iii.) *was defeated* is the verb stating what Pompey suffered.

The persons, or things, which are said to do or suffer, are called the subject to the verb.

The subject may always be found by putting "*who?*" or "*what?*" before the verb, and answering the question so formed.

Thus, in (i.) *shine* is the verb. Q. What shine? A. *The stars.* *The stars*, then, is the subject to the verb *shine*.

In (ii.) *slew* is the verb. Q. Who slew? A. *Romulus.* *Romulus* then is the subject of the verb *slew*.

* This exception is the verb *to be*, considered in a future chapter. Vide which states that a thing *is* something. It will be more conveniently Pt. I. ch. vi.

In (iii.) *was defeated* is the verb. Q. Who was defeated?
A. *Pompey*. *Pompey* then is the subject of the verb *was defeated*.

After having found the verb and its subject, it will be easy to arrange the remaining words according to their grammatical construction: this arranging is called analyzing the sentence.

CHAPTER II.

THE DIRECT OBJECT.

WHEN we have found the verb and its subject, the next thing is to inquire if it acts on an object.

Only verbs in the active voice can act on an object.

To find the object, read the subject and verb, and then put "*whom*," or "*what*," after the verb; the answer to the question so formed will be the direct object of the verb.

If the question cannot be answered, there will be no object.

Thus, in the first example the question will be, *the stars shine what*? here no answer is possible, and therefore there is no object.

In the second example, the question is, *Romulus slew whom*? Answer, *Remus*; hence *Remus* is the direct object of the verb *slew*.

In the third example, *was defeated* is a passive verb, and therefore there is no object.

In Latin, the subject is put in the nominative case, and the direct object in the accusative.

The verb must be in the same number and person as its subject.

Thus the above examples become in Latin—

- (i.) *Sidera lucent.*
- (ii.) *Romulus Remum interfecit.*
- (iii.) *Pompeius a Caesare victus est.*

It should be noticed that in Latin the order of the words is not the same as in English.

The English order is—

- | | | |
|---------------|----------|------------|
| 1. Subject. | 2. Verb. | 3. Object. |
| e. g. Romulus | slew | Remus. |

In Latin the order is—

- | | | |
|---------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. Subject. | 2. Object. | 3. Verb. |
| e. g. Romulus | Remum | interfecit. |

This will be very apparent, if reference be made to Cæsar, or to any other Latin prose author : it will be found, on opening the book at random, that, in almost every instance the word, immediately preceding a full stop is a verb.

The English of each sentence should be carefully analyzed, before it is turned into Latin.

It will be found convenient to write the analysis on the left hand page of the copy-book used for such purposes, and the corresponding Latin on the page opposite.

Although the column of subjects occupies the left side of the page, the student must not be allowed to write down the subject, before he has written the verb in the second column.

The small column on the extreme left is reserved for those conjunctions which may be regarded as linking on fresh sentences ; all words, not falling under the heads already mentioned, may be written in the column on the extreme right*.

The above examples, when analyzed, will be written thus :

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	
(i.)	The stars	shine.		
(ii.)	Romulus	slew	Remus.	
(iii.)	Pompey	was defeated	.....	by Cæsar, <i>abl. of agent.</i>

- (i.) *Sidera lucent.*
(ii.) *Romulus Remum interfecit.*
(iii.) *Pompeius a Caesare victus est.*

If the subject of the verb be one of the personal pronouns, it is seldom expressed in Latin, unless it is desired to call particular attention to it, or to distinguish it from some other word.

* Such words and phrases are discussed more fully in Pt. I. ch. iv., and in Pt. III.

Thus, *you have preserved the republic*, would be translated into Latin :

Rempubicam servavisti.

But, if it were intended to insist on the fact that you, and you alone, have preserved the republic, it would be written :

Tu rempublicam servavisti.

When any part of the sentence is not expressed in the Latin, it will be well to write it in its proper place in the analysis, and then enclose it in brackets: e. g.

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(You)	have preserved	the republic.
Rempubicam servavisti.		

Examples on the Verb, its Subject and Object.

The sun is shining.

The girl was singing.

Boys run.

The soldiers are coming.

The Romans conquered the enemy.

The general will lead the army.

The city has been taken.

The sailors will leave the ship.

Gold is dug out-of the earth.

Animals eat with teeth.

The city was built by Romulus.

Lightning has come from the clouds.

We speak with the tongue.

Rewards are given by the judge.

The law forbids crimes.

The bulls love the shade.

The horse draws the chariot.

The sun brings the day.

A cloud covers the earth.

Horses are restrained by reins.

The ship is driven by the wind.

We shall have spoken about the poet.
 Ye had seen the virgins.
 Men fear the gods.
 The poet was writing verses.
 The father was flogging his son.
 They ran into the city.
 Soldiers are attacking the town-walls.
 The master teaches the boys.
 The charioteer has driven the horses.
 The Senate will pass the law.
 The people¹ have chosen the tribunes.
 The boy was brought-up by his mother.
 Fables are read by children.
 Sheep are torn by wolves.
 Bulls have horns.
 He was speaking about punishments.
 Agave tore-in-pieces² her son.
 Silence becomes you.
 Beware-of the dog.
 We have brought letters from the army.
 He will never see his country.
 They have sought-for our hiding-place in-vain.
 The rain will stop the games.
 You must come with me ; I fear the darkness.
 He has lost a friend, he has gained a kingdom.
 You must stay with me and dine.
 The sentinels were cut-down, the camp broken-through.
 Seek honour, not wealth.
 The army is hastening to the city, Cæsar is come³ already.
 The King will depart to the army, the Queen will remain in
 the palace.
 We hear mourning on-all-sides, and see sad faces.
 Yet not without cause do we mourn.

Singular.

² *Dilaniare.*

³ *I am come* is perfect tense: so
 also *I was come* is pluperfect.

CHAPTER III.

WORDS USED TO QUALIFY OR DESCRIBE SUBSTANTIVES.

SUBSTANTIVES are qualified or described in three ways, either by adjectives, other substantives in apposition, or by genitive cases.

We will discuss these in order.

Adjectives.

Let us consider the sentences—

(i.) Many men are crushed by adverse circumstances.

(ii.) Death does not terrify a brave man.

In (i.) the substantive *men* is qualified by the adjective *many*, and the substantive *circumstances* is qualified by the adjective *adverse*.

In (ii.) the substantive *man* is qualified by the adjective *brave*.

The adjective must be in the same gender, number, and case, as the word it qualifies or describes. Thus, in (i.) *men* is masculine, plural, nominative (being the subject of the verb *are crushed*), and hence *many* is masculine, plural, nominative, to agree with it. So, the adjective *adverse* is feminine, plural, ablative, to agree with its substantive *circumstances* (*rebus*).

In (ii.) the substantive *man* is masculine, singular, accusative (being the direct object of the verb *terrify*), and so the adjective *brave* must also be masculine, singular, accusative, to agree with it.

When an adjective qualifies the substantive *man*, or *thing*, the substantive is often omitted, and the adjective put in the masculine gender if *man* is understood, and in the neuter if *thing* is understood.

This is especially the case, if the substantive is plural.

Thus, *many men* may be translated *multi*, and *many things* *multa*.

In English also the substantive is sometimes omitted; thus, we say *the wicked*, meaning *wicked men*; the Latin would be *mali*.

In Latin it is usual to place the substantive before the adjective; thus, *a brave man* becomes in Latin *vir fortis*.

By insisting at first on the observance of this rule, not only will elegance be gained, but, which is far more important, the frequent occurrence of false concords will be in a great degree avoided.

In analyzing a sentence, adjectives should never be separated from the words which they qualify or describe. Thus, the above examples would be analyzed as follows :

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	
(i.)	Many (men)	are crushed	.....	{ by adverse circumstances.
(ii.)	Death	does not terrify	a brave man.	

(i.) Multi rebus adversis premuntur.

(ii.) Mors virum fortem non terret.

Examples of Adjectives qualifying Substantives.

A small ship preserves sailors.

The whole commonwealth followed new customs.

All men praise his character.

An idle boy does not love hard¹ work.

The State is governed by a few nobles.

Dionysus deceived them with treacherous words.

The Roman legions take none alive.

They acknowledge no glory in victory, no disgrace in flight.

We have lost all our books.

You will write many lines².

Walls were strengthened, battlements added, towers increased (in height), and all things prepared.

In that contest the vast amphitheatre was burnt.

Apelles himself painted that picture.

That picture was painted by Apelles himself.

¹ *Arduus*.

² *Versus*.

You will not see a sadder sight.
 I have never eaten better bread.
 May he never drink worse wine.
 They are all wearing black garments.
 A huge stone was rolling³ down-from the mountain.
 Ye are idle, ye are idle.
 All the good citizens⁴ were-present.
 Cæsar has slain all his enemies.
 I never saw a more beautiful woman.
 These apples are sweet, those are sweeter.
 Gargara herself wonders-at her own harvests.
 Impious labour has subdued every-thing.
 A brave man will fear God alone.
 Let us avoid so great a danger.
 They all returned unwillingly⁵ into the camp.
 A sure friend is discerned in a doubtful matter.
 The slender moisture deserts the barren sand.
 Pan himself left his ancestral grove.
 One wolf will not fear many lambs.
 In vain will you gaze-on the vast harvest.
 Three hundred snowy heifers browse the thickets.
 A sudden tempest terrifies sailors more than (one) foreseen.
 Let us carry the dead out of the city.

Apposition.

Let us consider the sentences—

(i.) Romulus slew his brother Remus.

(ii.) The law was proposed by the consul Claudius.

Here in (i.) we see that the substantive *his brother* is described, or named, by the substantive *Remus*.

In (ii.) the substantive *consul* is described by *Claudius*.

³ Say, *Was being rolled*: the Latin word *volvère* is transitive.

⁴ Say, *Every (quisque) best citizen*.

⁵ Say, *Unwilling*.

When substantives describe one another in this way, they are said to be in apposition to one another.

Substantives in apposition must be in the same case.

Substantives in apposition must be considered as inseparable in analysis.

The above sentences will become in Latin—

(i.) *Romulus fratrem suum Remum interfecit.*

(ii.) *Lex a Claudio consule rogata est.*

Fratrem and *Remum* are in the same case, because they are in apposition ; and this case is the accusative, because they are the object of the verb *slew*.

Claudio and *consule* are in apposition, and they are governed by the preposition *a*, which governs the ablative case

Examples on Apposition.

Agave tore-in-pieces her son Pentheus.

Cadmus built the city of Thebes¹.

We call our fatherland a parent.

Socrates sought-for some-one (as) a patron.

I have seen all the letters written by the tribune Clodius.

King Tarquin took Gabii by a wicked fraud.

Appius Claudius made his freedmen senators.

Caius was thrifty (as) a boy.

Avarice makes men blind.

Show yourself a man.

Aulus the dictator set-out from the city.

Wretched man, you have ruined us all.

I have seen Hannibal the Carthaginian general.

The Emperor Caius made his horse consul.

He lived with Quintus Catulus, both father and son.

The brothers Tiberius and Caius Gracchus were both slain in civil tumult.

I, your enemy, ask this favour.

¹ Say, *The city Thebes*.

Those books render-famous Lucius Lucullus, a very brave and illustrious man.

Friends, Romans, fellow-citizens, hear my words.

We unhappy boys have lost all our books.

The whole world is divided into two parts, earth and water.

The city of Rome² is the acknowledged³ capital.

The poet Ennius wrote many verses before Virgil.

Behold Italy our fatherland.

There are three judges in the lower-regions, Minos, Rhadamanthus, and Æacus.

All men called Catiline enemy and parricide.

You Romans have never been conquered.

Metellus and Marcus Silanus, the consuls elect⁴, shared the province between them.

The Genitive Case.

A third way of qualifying or describing a substantive is by using another substantive in the genitive or possessive case.

The genitive case is generally known by the word *of* before it: e. g.

(i.) The gates of the city are open.

(ii.) He was bewailing his son's death.

In (i.) the substantive *gates* is qualified, or described, by the substantive *city* in the genitive case.

In (ii.) the substantive *death* is qualified by the substantive *son's* in the possessive (i. e. in the genitive) case.

These would become in Latin—

(i.) Urbis portae patent.

(ii.) Mortem filii plorabat.

The genitive may either precede or follow the word which it qualifies, in Latin.

² Say, *The city Rome.*

³ *Notus.*

⁴ *Designatus.*

In analyzing a sentence, a noun in the genitive or possessive case must never be separated from the noun which it qualifies.

It may be observed that an adjective and genitive case are often interchangeable : thus we might say,

either, *the king's palace*, or, *the royal palace*.

either, *the race of men*, or, *the human race*.

either, *a son's love*, or, *filial love* ; and so on.

Examples on the Genitive.

In human bodies they imitate the life of the gods.

Death, the end of life, leads us to a new life.

The speech of the consul stirred the whole people.

Laws do not restrain the vices of men.

The foreseeing mind of Romulus was-aware-of this.

We were reading the plays¹ of Terence.

The remains of the city were dug-up.

The bodies of the slain have been brought into the city.

All the king's soldiers have surrendered².

Not even Fabius could restrain the ardour of his men.

The very name of peace is sweet.

The envoys of the colonies were-present.

This reasoning of their leader was approved by many in the camp.

From the difference of their customs the founders of the race had foreseen frequent wars.

The rewards of the informers were not less hated than their crimes.

Piso's speech was graceful³.

Many signs of the sedition breaking-out were repressed by those-in-the-secret⁴.

There were not wanting in the Emperor's army the seeds of discord.

¹ *Fabula*.

³ *Comis*.

² Say, *Surrendered (dédère) themselves*.

⁴ *Conscius*.

CHAPTER IV.

WORDS USED TO QUALIFY VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

JUST as adjectives are used to qualify nouns, so adverbs are used to qualify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs : e. g.

(i.) The lofty pine is often shaken by the wind.

(ii.) To-morrow's life is too late.

(iii.) Not always do the showers fall from the clouds.

In (i.) the verb *is shaken* is qualified by the adverb *often*.

In (ii.) the adjective *late* is qualified by the adverb *too*.

In (iii.) the adverb *always* qualifies the verb *fall*.

In analysis adverbs must be considered inseparable from the words which they qualify.

The position of adverbs varies so much, according to the emphasis attached to them, that no rule can be given on this point.

Instead of adverbs we may have various cases of nouns, and phrases, all which must be learnt by degrees from the syntax*.

It will be found convenient to write all such qualifying words and phrases, except adverbs, in the column, which is reserved for this purpose, on the extreme right of the page, allowing a fresh line to each qualifying phrase : e. g.

We have seen in our time many changes at Rome.

Here the two qualifying phrases are *in our time*, and *at Rome*.

The sentence, then, will be analyzed thus :

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(We)	have seen	many changes { in our time at Rome.

Nostris temporibus multas vidimus Romae mutationes.

* See Pt. III.

CHAPTER V.

THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

WE have seen that a verb agrees with its subject in number and person ; sometimes, however, there are two or more subjects joined together by conjunctions: e. g.

(i.) Hannibal and Philopœmen were carried off by poison.

(ii.) If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

In (i.) the subject of the verb *were carried off* is *Hannibal and Philopœmen*.

In (ii.) the subject of the verb *are well* is, in the first place where it occurs, *you and Tullia*, and in the second, *Cicero and I*.

Such subjects as these are called composite subjects.

A composite subject requires a plural verb.

A composite subject requires the verb to be in the first person rather than the second, and in the second rather than the third.

There will be no difficulty in applying these rules, if a personal pronoun be inserted between the subject and the verb.

Thus the first example will be read:

Hannibal and Philopœmen (they) were carried off by poison.

The second will stand thus:

If you and Tullia (you) are well, Cicero and I (we) are well.

It will at once be perceived that the verb (*they*) *were carried off* is in the third person plural; the first verb (*you*) *are well* is in the second person plural, and the second verb (*we*) *are well* is in the first person plural.

In Latin the first person is always written before the second, and the second before the third.

Thus, when Cardinal Wolsey wrote *Ego et Rex meus*, he

14 *EXAMPLES ON THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT. [Pt. I. ch. 5.*

wrote correct Latin, although the king was not pleased at finding himself mentioned after his minister.

The above sentences would be analyzed thus:

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	Hannibal and Philopœmen }	were carried off	..... { by poison, <i>abl.</i>
(ii.)	Cicero and I	are well,	of manner.
	if you and Tullia	are well.	

(i.) Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopœmen.

(ii.) Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.

Examples on the Composite Subject.

Houses and villages were being destroyed by fire.

The horse and his rider are overthrown in the sea.

You and your brother deserve well ¹ of the republic.

Both I and Balbus lifted up our hands.

Agamemnon and Menelaus led the Greeks to Troy.

You and I will return to the Forum.

Two brothers, Romulus and Remus, founded Rome.

Syphax and his kingdom were in the power of the Romans.

The beginning and the end are not in the power of the same (man).

A compound object, i. e. an object compounded of two or more nouns connected by conjunctions, will present no difficulty. Each part so connected must of course be in the accusative case: e. g.

You have destroyed both our city and our name.

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(You)	have destroyed	both our city and our name.
Et urbem nostram et nomen delevisi.		

¹ *I deserve well of you, Bene de te mereor.*

CHAPTER VI.

THE VERB "TO BE."

THE verb *to be* states that its subject *is* something.

This something is called the complement (*complere*, to fill-up), because it completes or fills up the sense: e. g.

Life is a dream.

Here the complement is *a dream*.

Besides the verb *to be*, some passive verbs, such as *to be called*, *to become*, &c., may be followed by a complement.

The complement will generally agree with the subject.

The following sentences are analyzed:

- (i.) Life is a dream.
- (ii.) No one is born wise.
- (iii.) Cæsar was made prætor and consul.

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	Life	is	..... a dream, <i>nom. of compl.</i>
(ii.)	No one	is born	..... wise. "
(iii.)	Cæsar	was made	..... { prætor and consul, <i>nom. of compl.</i>

- (i.) Vita est somnium.
- (ii.) Nemo nascitur sapiens.
- (iii.) Cæsar factus est prætor et consul.

Somnium, *sapiens*, *prætor et consul*, are nominatives of the complement.

It will be seen that the complement may be either a substantive, or an adjective, or even two or more substantives or adjectives linked together.

Examples on the Nominative of the Complement.

Elephants are very sagacious.

The slaves were witnesses against Publius.

Our soldiers are safe to a man ¹.

¹ To a man, *ad unum*.

Manlius and his brother will be tribunes of the people.
 Rome is the capital of Italy.
 A commonwealth has been called the best government.
 The judges were good and honest men.
 We were witnesses of all these things.
 The Roman citizens were called Quirites.
 Conquered nations will be made slaves.
 His father was not made prætor.
 The pro-consul is the brother of the tribune Clodius.
 Cicero has been called the father of his country.
 Virtue and vice are contrary to one another².
 You will go safest in a middle (course).
 In that city are many good-men.
 I am a Roman citizen.
 The boy is lazy rather than stupid.
 That gate was called the unlucky.
 The hardest stones are called gems.
 You will become older every-day³.
 You will never become learned.
 Moles are born blind.
 In the light of the past future things are not doubtful.
 They are at-once poor and proud.
 Many were left half-dead and unharmed in the hurry of victory.
 King Tarquin was called the Proud.
 Grief and terror are feeble bonds of affection.
 Bread will become cheaper in the autumn.
 The fortune of the war was long doubtful.
 Marius was not made careless or insolent by victory.

CHAPTER VII.

THE PROLATE INFINITIVE.

If we consider such verbs as *I seem, I am wont, I am able,*
 &c., we see that they carry no meaning when they stand

² Say, *Between themselves.*

³ *In dies.*

alone; neither do they act on an object; nor are they followed by a nominative of the complement. In fact they can only be used as auxiliary verbs, and are always followed by another verb in the infinitive mood. These verbs are called prolative (from *pro*, and *fero*, supine *latum*), because they may be supposed to *carry forward* the meaning to the infinitive following.

This infinitive is called the prolate infinitive.

In analyzing a sentence containing a prolate infinitive, the infinitive must be considered as forming part of the auxiliary verb to which it is attached.

Thus the sentences—

(i.) They are wont to burn their dead.

(ii.) Thou art said to be the father of thy country.

will be analyzed as follows:

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	They	are wont to burn	their dead.
(ii.)	Thou	art said to be	..... the father of thy country.

(i.) Mortuos urere solent.

(ii.) Tu patriae diceris esse pater.

Urere and *esse* are prolate infinitives.

Care must be taken not to mistake the infinitive, which is used in English to express purpose, for the prolate infinitive: e.g. in the sentence, *We eat to live*, *to live* is not the prolate infinitive, but it expresses the purpose of our eating, and must be translated into Latin by the conjunction *ut*, thus:—

Edimus ut vivamus. We eat, *in order that* we may live.

It should be noticed that verbs of endeavouring are generally prolate in English, but not so in Latin, except *conor*.

Thus, in English we say, we strive *to win*; in Latin we say, we strive, *in order that* we may win.

A few examples are appended on the next page to show the difference between this construction and the prolate infinitive.

- (i.) Cæsar went to Rome, to see the games.
 (ii.) We ought to strive to conquer.
 (iii.) Pompey sent a messenger to inform the senate.

	SUBJECT.	VEEB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	Cæsar	went	..... to Rome,
	that (he)	might see	the games.
(ii.)	(We)	ought to strive,	
	that (we)	may conquer.	
(iii.)	Pompey	sent	a messenger,
	that (he)	might inform	the senate.

or *,

(iii.)	Pompey	sent	a messenger,
	who	might inform	the senate.

(i.) Cæsar Romam contendit, ut ludos videret.

(ii.) Debemus eniti, ut vincamus.

(iii.) Pompeius nuntium misit, { ut senatum certiozem faceret.
 qui senatum certiozem faceret.

Examples on the Prolate Infinitive.

Fabricius and Curius were wont to till their land with their own hand.

No one ought to be called happy before death.

A brave man is-unwilling to yield to fortune.

Xerxes determined to build a bridge across the sea¹.

The army began to advance against the enemy.

Mettius and the Albani could not deceive the Roman king.

Prometheus is said to have stolen fire from heaven.

You and I have preferred to remain in the city.

They ought to have avoided the danger.

Cease to pour forth soft complaints.

I seem to myself to be able to do something in this matter

Semiramis was believed by many to be a boy.

The Romans prefer rather to act than to speak.

I will cease to appear old.

I can relate to you many precepts of the ancients.

I am wont to speak truth, and you willing to hear (it).

* See Pt. III. ch. xix.

¹ Say, to join the sea by a bridge.

He dared to enter the camp alone.

The shadow of a dog cannot bite.

This could not have been done by you alone.

How many historians of his acts is the great^a Alexander said to have had with him !

The poet Ennius is supposed to have been sculptured in marble on the tomb of the Scipios.

Their minds could have been conciliated by ever-so-little^a liberality of the thrifty old man.

From-this-point^a I will commence to sing.

They cannot have wandered from the road.

Now the well-worn ploughshare begins to glisten in the furrow.

Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse, dared not trust his neck to a barber, but taught his own daughters to shave him.

He wished not to seem good, but to be good.

Agathocles, king of Sicily, was accustomed to place earthenware cups among the gold (ones) on his table.

CHAPTER VIII.

VERBS OF ASKING AND TEACHING.

WE have seen that the direct object of a verb can always be found by putting *whom* or *what* after the verb, and answering the question so formed. If the question formed by *whom* can be answered, the object is of course a person ; if the question formed by *what* is answered, the object will be a thing.

Now it sometimes happens that both these questions can be answered, and then there are two objects, one of the person, and the other of the thing: e. g.

Ceres taught rustics the arts of husbandry.

Questions for the object :

Ceres taught *whom* ? Answer, *rustics*.

Ceres taught (rustics) *what* ? Answer, *the arts of husbandry*.

^a *Magnus ille*.

^b *Quantuluscunque*.

^c *Hinc*.

Here, then, *rustics* is the object of the person, and *the arts of husbandry* that of the thing.

Verbs which act on two direct objects are generally verbs of *asking* or *teaching*. There are a few others, which will best be learnt by experience. Examples:

(i.) I ask you this favour.

(ii.) Ceres taught rustics the arts of husbandry.

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	I	ask	{ you this favour.
(ii.)	Ceres	taught	{ rustics the arts of husbandry.

(i.) Hoc beneficium te rogo.

(ii.) Ceres ruricolos docuit artes agrestes.

Verbs of *asking* demand special notice.

It will be observed that the former of the above examples may be rendered in English in three ways :

(1) I ask you this favour.

(2) I ask this favour of (i. e. from) you.

(3) I ask you for this favour.

In Latin we may employ only the first two of these methods: e. g.

(1) Hoc beneficium te rogo.

(2) Hoc beneficium a te rogo.

In English, verbs of *telling*, *commanding*, &c., appear to act on two direct objects, like verbs of asking and teaching: in Latin, the thing represents the direct object, and is therefore in the accusative case, while the person is in the dative case.

This dative, which is called the dative of the remoter object, always represents the person for whose advantage, or otherwise, the action takes place. It will be discussed more fully in the next chapter.

Examples on Verbs of Asking and Teaching.

I asked Cæsar his opinion of the war¹.

He taught his son letters.

¹ i. e. Concerning the war.

We asked them (for) many things, but they gave us nothing.
 King Solomon asked wisdom (of) God instead of a long life.
 You have taught us many things to-day.
 He taught me much, and asked no reward (of) me.
 I asked him many things, but he told me nothing.
 Ceres is said to have taught men the arts of husbandry ².
 We ask of you not tribute, but manhood and men.
 Pray the gods, ye husbandmen, (for) moist summers and
 cloudless winters.
 She will be the first to ask ³ me (for) help.
 I was the first to ask you (for) your vote.

CHAPTER IX.

THE DATIVE OF THE REMOTER OBJECT.

LET us consider the sentences—

- (i.) I will give you nothing.
- (ii.) Stop me that rascal.

If these be analyzed, it will appear that—

In (i.) the direct object of the verb *will give* is *nothing*.

And in (ii.) the direct object of the verb *stop* is *that rascal*.

The question presents itself, what position do *you* and *me* hold in their respective sentences.

They represent the persons for whose advantage, or disadvantage, something is done ; and they may be written *to you*, and *for me*, respectively.

Thus the sentences may be analyzed as follows:

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	
(i.)	(I)	will give	nothing	(to) you.
(ii.)	(Thou)	stop	that rascal	(for) me.

These words will now be recognized as dative cases; and the sentences will become in Latin :

² *The arts of husbandry, artes agrestes.*

³ *Say, She the first will ask me.*

(i.) Nihil tibi dabo.

(ii.) Siste mihi scelus istud.

A dative used in this way is called the remoter object of the verb.

Examples on the Dative of the Remoter Object.

The senate had promised the election to Galba.

Give me that book.

He told me every thing.

O Varus, Varus, give me back my legions.

Fortune has given too much to many, enough to none.

Show him the door.

Solon gave laws to the Athenians, Lycurgus to the Spartans.

Slaves cultivate the land for others, not for themselves.

Fortune has given all these things (as) a reward to the victors.

Every one claims virtue for himself.

Scipio gave his forces a few days' rest at Massilia.

Leave me this one child.

Our ancestors added much to the state in former wars.

In this way you will get yourself a renowned name.

He did not give up that time to rest and luxury, after the manner of others.

Tell me your name.

Bring me his head.

The consul gave his soldiers all the spoil.

He will not sell me that farm.

We owe our parents much.

CHAPTER X.

THE VERB-NOUN INFINITIVE.

LET us consider the sentences—

(i.) It is human to err.

(ii.) The good hate to sin for love of virtue.

In the first sentence, when we ask the usual question to find the subject, viz. what is (human)? we get for answer, *to err*.

This infinitive *to err* is used, then, like a noun, inasmuch as it is the subject of the verb *is*.

In the second sentence, when we ask the usual question to find the object of the verb *hate*, viz. the good hate what? we get for answer, *to sin*.

This infinitive, then, *to sin*, occupies the place usually held by a noun, as direct object of a verb.

Words like these, which partake of the nature both of a verb and of a noun, are called verb-nouns.

Verb-nouns are always neuter in gender.

The above sentences will of course be analyzed as follows:

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	To err	is	..... human.
(ii.)	The good	hate	to sin for love of virtue.

(i.) Errare est humanum.

(ii.) Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore.

A verb-noun may act on an object of its own; and, when this is the case, the object so acted on must be considered as inseparable from the verb-noun which acts on it: e. g.

It is base to fear death.

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
To fear death	is	..... base.

Turpe est mortem timere.

Here the subject of the verb *is* is composed of the verb-noun *to fear* acting on *death* an object of its own.

It will be noticed that in English, when the verb-noun infinitive is the subject of the verb, the pronoun *it* is generally placed in apposition to it.

This pronoun must almost always be omitted in Latin.

It may be as well to observe here that, although a theoretical difficulty, or even a difference of opinion, may exist in distinguishing between the prolate infinitive and the verb-noun

infinitive, when the latter is the object of the principal verb, yet this will produce no confusion in practice.

Thus, in the sentence, *They preferred to remain at home*, it is immaterial whether *to remain* be considered as a prolate infinitive, or as the verb-noun standing in the place of object to the verb *preferred*.

The Latin in either case would be :

Domi manere maluerunt.

Examples on the Verb-Noun.

It is easy to correct the faults of others, but difficult even ¹ to see our own.

It would be dangerous to go-on.

The old love to gaze-on the sports of the young.

To many it seems useless to worship the gods.

It is (the duty ²) of a youth to revere old age.

It is ours ² to act, yours to speak.

With so great an army to be conquered by a weary and flying foe would be disgraceful.

It behoves us to await the event.

The wicked hate to sin for fear of punishment.

You must remember to keep (your) mind undisturbed in difficult circumstances.

It is often difficult to show both justice and mercy.

To be content with one's own substance ² is the surest wealth.

CHAPTER XI.

THE VERB-NOUN, CONTINUED.

THERE are two forms of the verb-noun in English :

1. The infinitive as we have already seen.

¹ *Vcl.*

² *Suae res.*

² Cf. Pt. III. ch. x.

2. That formed by adding "ing" to the verb, as *walking*.
Thus, we may either say :

(i.) It is easier to walk than to run.

or, (ii.) Walking is easier than running.

In (i.) *to walk* and *to run* are verb-nouns, and the corresponding verb-nouns in (ii.) are *walking* and *running*.

The Latin in either case would be :

Ambulare facilius est quam currere.

The verb-noun can be declined in Latin through all its cases by means of the gerunds. Thus :

Nom. Currere, to run, or, running.

Acc. { Currere, to run, or, running.
Currendum, running, (used after prepositions governing the acc.)

Gen. Currendi, of running.

Dat. Currendo, to or for running.

Abl. Currendo, by running.

Care must be taken not to confuse the verb-noun with the present participle, which also ends in "ing."

There will not be much danger of this for any one who has learnt to distinguish between a noun and an adjective.

Examples on the Verb-Noun.

Talking is easier than being-silent.

By teaching others we ourselves are taught.

You will not lessen your grief by mourning.

To be born of princes is chance¹.

Cicero the orator excelled in the art of speaking.

Let us prepare every thing for² flying before the night.

An exile lives in the hope of returning to his country.

It is often more difficult to find an end, than a beginning.

Labour in business, fortitude in peril, industry in carrying on, rapidity in finishing, prudence in foreseeing, all these are imperial virtues.

¹ *Fortuitus*, adj.

² *Ad*.

Not only were their arms ready, but their service³ and love of obeying.

Not even our own age has neglected to hand down to posterity the acts and characters of illustrious men.

Men alone of animals delight in slaying their own kind.

Give your attention, ye young, to learning, leave talking to the old.

Cicero excelled in the art of speaking.

Let us deliberate about returning home.

It will not be inglorious to have fallen at the very limit of land and nature.

The glory of saving the city will be yours.

All things have been prepared for commencing play.

They will save themselves, if they can, by running-away.

Let it be your care to learn-beforehand the wind, and the changing mood⁴ of the sky.

Either learn or depart; there remains a third lot,—to be flogged.

He was a man better adapted for silence than speech⁵.

Let not so dire a lust of ruling be thine, my son.

Many good men have considered it rather as confidence in their integrity⁶, than as arrogance, to relate their lives themselves.

Let all the soldiers anoint themselves before fighting.

It was once a peculiarity of the Roman people to make-war far from home, and with the outworks of their power to defend the fortunes of their allies, not their own roofs.

He himself had not the power of commanding or forbidding: he was not an emperor, but a cause of war.

By hesitating and putting off you lose great opportunities.

To have the same wishes and aversions⁷, this is sure friendship.

Ye search-out every thing by sea and land for the sake of eating (it).

³ *Obsequium.*

⁶ *Mores. Gen.*

⁴ *Mos.*

⁷ *Say, To wish and not-to-wish*

⁵ *Say, For being-silent—for speaking. the-same-things.*

Moved by the desire of ruling, or through the arrogance of the magistrates, the common people have often separated ⁸ from the senate.

They think it of great (moment) to have slain the tribunes of the people.

It is a greater disgrace to lose things acquired, than never to have gained them at-all.

To do what you like with-impunity, that is to-be-a-king.

Do not ruin the good by pardoning ⁹ the bad.

So, by prohibiting from faults, rather than by punishing, in a short time he consolidated ¹⁰ his army.

They think themselves the more illustrious in recounting the brave acts of their ancestors.

CHAPTER XII.

MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

THEIR food is simple, fruit of-the-field, fresh game¹, or curded milk.

I have taken up the cause of the republic.

He saw a roof beautifully inlaid.

The lands are occupied by all in-their-turn².

They despise the laboured ³ honour of monuments, as burdensome to the deceased⁴.

No one would devote himself to death for his country, without great hope of immortality.

This opinion his disciple Pythagoras very-much strengthened.

The greatness of the Roman people carried respect beyond the ancient bounds of the empire.

They hang traitors and deserters on trees, cowards and idlers⁵ they drown in a swamp.

The consent of all is the voice of reason.

⁸ *Secedere.*

⁹ *Ignoscere*, governs dat.

¹⁰ *Firmare.*

¹ *Recens fera.*

² *Invicem.*

³ *Operosus.*

⁴ *Defunctus.*

⁵ *Ignavus.*

They do not reckon the number of the days, as we (do), but of the nights.

The men of this country transact no business, either public or private, except in-arms⁶.

They wished to depart for Rome⁷ with me.

Very few states of Sicily have been subdued by our ancestors in war.

I would not have believed this about the statues, unless I had seen them lying on the ground shattered-to-pieces⁸.

The Gauls fight with the same weapon hand-to-hand⁹, or from-a-distance, as occasion demands.

Concerning lesser matters the chiefs deliberate, concerning greater (matters) all (of them).

It is worth while¹⁰ to know the actual law¹¹.

Rome, the capital of the world, was not built by Balbus, but by Romulus.

No one would leave Italy or Africa, and betake himself to Germany, unless it were his fatherland.

The atrocity of the punishment irritated the feelings of the two most notable Greek states in Italy.

In all battles the eyes are conquered first.

To labour is to pray.

I have lived at Rome, at Athens, and at Corinth, and everywhere have I found friends.

I would rather err with Plato, than perceive the truth¹² with such-men-as-these¹³.

It is especially a disgrace to have left the shield (behind), and¹⁴ it is not lawful for the man disgraced¹⁵ to attend religious ceremonies, or to enter the council.

⁶ Say, *armed*.

⁷ Cf. Pt. III. ch. ii.

⁸ *Disjectus*.

⁹ *Hand-to-hand, cominus; from-a-distance, eminus*.

¹⁰ *It is worth while, operae pretium est*.

¹¹ Say, *The law itself*.

¹² *Verum*.

¹³ *Such a man as this*, implying contempt, *iste*.

¹⁴ *And not, nec*.

¹⁵ *Ignominiosus*.

Husbands in that country have the power of life and death over¹⁶ their children.

The Nervii, driven from this hope, surrounded their winter-quarters¹⁷ with a ditch and rampart.

A painter could not better describe his appearance.

Diodotus the stoic lived many years at my house, blind.

He could not remain there many days, for want¹⁸ of provisions.

Rome and Carthage were the greatest cities in the world.

The Campanians looking-on¹⁹ had filled not only the rampart of the camp, but even the walls of the town.

Good manners there avail²⁰ more, than good laws elsewhere.

The Germans all have²¹ the same make²² of body, fierce blue eyes²³, yellow hair, huge frames²⁴, strong only for²⁵ a sudden effort.

Their land is every-where either awful with forests, or dank²⁶ with marshes.

Epaminondas, in my opinion the first man²⁷ in Greece, is said to have played excellently on the lyre.

They are accustomed to lay open vaults under the earth, (as) a receptacle for their fruit²⁸.

Day is pushed-on by day, and new moons hasten to wane²⁹.

Tiberius wished to give corn to the people without price.

These words of Chrysis about Glycerium are written in my mind.

Quintus Fabius and Caius Julius were made consuls that year.

The Æqui were besieging Ortona, a Latin city.

Some few, trusting in their strength, strove³⁰ to swim-over.

¹⁶ *In.*

¹⁷ *Winter quarters, hiberna.*

¹⁸ *For want, inopia.*

¹⁹ *Looking on, prospicientes.*

²⁰ *Valère.*

²¹ *Cf. Pt. III. ch. xvii.*

²² *Habitus.*

²³ *Say, Fierce and blue.*

²⁴ *Corpus.*

²⁵ *Ad.*

²⁶ *Fœdus.*

²⁷ *Say, The first man (princeps) of Greece.*

²⁸ *i. e. Of their fruit.*

²⁹ *Pergunt interire.*

³⁰ *Contendère, prolative.*

The quarrels³¹ of lovers are the renewal of love.

Not all men do shrubs delight, and the lowly tamarisks.

The Helvetii are every-where kept-in by the nature of the locality.

I have seen the remains of ancient Rome.

Cæsar was killed by many conspirators.

Amongst these was his friend Brutus.

He has found a pleasant abode, he will not return hither.

Ye have been weeping, all (of you).

They cannot find an enemy, they will fight among themselves.

She has black hair and blue eyes.

Not even thieves will deceive their friends.

We were all much frightened, especially Titinius.

One hundred thousand men laid-down their arms.

Hunger is a terrible enemy.

They must carry the bodies of the slain out-of the city.

We are all attracted by the desire of praise, and all the best men³² are led-on by glory.

The expectation of the poet Archias surpassed the fame of his genius, and his arrival and admiration (for the man) surpassed the expectation.

Before Jupiter no husbandmen subdued the field.

Some say one thing³³, some another³⁴, not even two agree.

You cannot deceive me with vain words.

Tmolus sends saffron odours, India ivory, the soft Sabæi their incense, but the naked Chalybes send iron.

Deucalion cast stones into the empty world, whence sprung men, a hardy race.

Thou comest as God of the vast sea, and sailors will worship thy deity alone.

In vain do ye ask peace of us, while ye prepare for war³⁴.

Ho distributed money frugally, and not as (a man) about-to-die.

³¹ *Irac.*

things.

³² Say, *Every (quisque) best man.*

³⁴ Say, *Prepare war.*

³³ Say, *Some men (alii) say some*

She is extremely angry, and not without reason, for her maidservant has left her alone.

In vain he tried to deceive us, the scoundrel !

Whose are the pictures ? they are Zeno's.

The coward boasts, that he may be thought brave.

He was rejoicing, because he had slain a foe.

Talking is easy, it is much more difficult to be silent.

The foolish love to talk, the wise to be silent.

The children to the Tiber !

They said this to escape punishment, but they will be punished notwithstanding.

I shall sell my coat to get money.

Of the two brothers, one ³⁵ killed his enemy, the other ³⁶ was himself slain.

The hill was more handy for flight than the plain.

Nothing was done with design or by command, chance governed every thing.

Four elephants were taken, the rest, forty in number, were slain.

No one of all the Numidians followed the king out-of the battle.

The field planted with shrubs hindered the view.

During ³⁶ these delays Metellus suddenly showed himself with his army.

The plain was strewn with darts, weapons, and corpses, and between them the earth was dyed with blood.

After the slaughter of Caius Gracchus and Marcus Fulvius, many of your order were slain in prison.

Catiline hurried home from the senate.

The Africans are of healthy frame, and enduring of toil.

³⁵ *One—the other, alter—alter.*

³⁶ *Inter.*

PART II.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

CHAPTER I.

THE RELATIVE CLAUSE.

WHEN we find complete sentences occupying the place of nouns, adjectives, or adverbs, or linked by conjunctions to the principal sentence, these sentences are called clauses.

The relative clause is that clause which contains the relative pronoun.

The relative clause always begins, both in Latin and English, with the relative itself, and ends with the first break in the sense.

Thus in the sentence—

We worship God who created us,
the relative clause is *who created us*.

So in the sentence—

The city, which Romulus built, was called Rome,
the relative clause is *which Romulus built*.

In analyzing a sentence containing a relative clause, the relative clause must always be treated as a separate sentence.

It will be found useful to enclose the relative clause within brackets, or to cover it up with the finger, till the principal sentence has been analyzed.

The following sentences are analyzed :

- (i.) We worship God who created us.
- (ii.) The city which Romulus built was called Rome.
- (iii.) All Gaul is divided into three parts, of which the Belgæ inhabit one, the Aquitani another, and the third those who in our tongue are called Celts, in their own, Gauls.

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	
(i.)	(We)	worship	God,	
	who	created	us.	
(ii.)	The city	was called	.....	Rome,
	Romulus	built	which.	
(iii.)	All Gaul	is divided	.....	into three parts,
	the Belgæ	inhabit	one of which,	
	the Aquitani	(inhabit)	another,	
	and those	(inhabit)	the third,	
	who	are called	.....	{ Celts
				{ in their own tongue,
	(who)	(are called)	.....	{ Gauls
				{ in ours.

- (i.) Deum veneramur, qui nos creavit.
- (ii.) Urbs, quam Romulus condidit, Roma vocata est.
- (iii.) Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgæ, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum linguâ Celtæ, nostrâ Galli, appellantur.

It will be noticed that the relative clause is an adjectival clause, i. e. it occupies the place of an adjective, inasmuch as it describes some noun going before it.

Thus in (i.) the relative clause, *who created us*, describes the substantive *God*; and in (ii.) the clause, *which Romulus built*, describes *the city*.

This noun, which the relative clause describes, is called the antecedent (*ante*, before, *cedo*, I go) to the relative.

The relative must agree with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; thus, in (i.) *qui* is masculine, singular, and of the third person, to agree with *Deum*; and in (ii.) *quam* is feminine, singular, to agree with *urbs*.

Difficulty is often experienced at first in assigning to the relative its correct place as subject or object; or in determining its person correctly, when it is the subject of the verb in its own

clause: these difficulties will often be removed by substituting for the relative the personal pronoun, with the conjunction *and*.

Thus, the above examples may be read—

(i.) We worship God, *and he* created us.

(ii.) The city, *and it* Romulus built, was called Rome.

The relative is often omitted in English, when it is the object of the verb in its own clause.

Thus when we say:

I never received the letters you sent.

we mean the letters *which* you sent.

The relative, however, must never be omitted in Latin.

The position of the relative clause is much the same in Latin as in English: it generally comes immediately after the antecedent which it describes.

The relative always stands first in its clause; and it must be remembered that, when the relative clause has once been begun, it must be finished before the principal sentence is resumed.

The relative may have a verb-noun, or even a complete sentence, for its antecedent. In either of these cases, the relative will be in the neuter gender: e. g.

(i.) To retreat, which you advise, is not the part of a Roman general.

(ii.) I came in time, which is of all things the first.

In (i.) the antecedent of the relative *which* is the verb-noun, *to retreat*.

In (ii.) the antecedent of the relative *which* is the complete sentence, *I came in time*.

The Latin will be—

(i.) *Pedem referre, quod tu suades, non est imperatoris Romani.*

(ii.) *In tempore veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.*

It will be noticed that in English we should say *as* you advise, instead of *which* you advise. This use of *as* instead of a relative is very common in English, as will be seen in the chapter on correlatives.

Examples on the Relative Clause.

Fabius alone upheld the state, which the army was betraying through hatred of the consul.

Let us avoid those things which appear to be evil, and follow good.

They drove away the Samnites who were around the gates, and took-possession-of the walls.

We, who are going-to-be your judges, cannot receive money from you.

Then the camp, which had been burnt by the Romans, gave certain signs of victory.

Out of seven thousand citizens, only six hundred were found who returned safe to the city.

Brutus, by whom Cæsar was murdered, afterwards slew himself with his own hand.

All those men to whom we gave freedom have deserted us in this matter.

Those who wish to die happy, ought to look forward to the end of life.

We ought to love those by whom we are loved, but not¹ to hate those who hate us.

All their strength is in their infantry, whom they load with tools², and baggage, besides their arms.

The vestiges of their ancient renown remain far and wide, camps and clearings³, by the circuit of which even now you may estimate the former power of the nation.

They collect amber, which they call glesum.

Their sole reliance is on their arrows, which they point with bone, for want⁴ of steel.

Formerly those who wished to change their abode were conveyed in fleets, not by land.

Immediately after sleep, which they generally prolong into the day, the Germans bathe, usually in warm water⁵.

¹ *Neque.*

⁴ *For want, inopiâ.*

² *Ferramenta.*

⁵ *Warm water, calida* agreeing with *aqua* understood.

³ *Spatia.*

If the State in which they are born be dull⁶ by reason of a long peace, most of the young nobles of their own accord seek those nations which are then carrying on some war.

The dog he was leading was blind.

I, who lent you the money, am ruined⁷.

The contest of which you were speaking is over⁸.

He whose life is sincere will alone be happy.

The city he lives in was called "The Long White (City)" by its founder.

Give me back the money you have taken.

The servant he lives with is old and faithful.

The city by whose ruins we are surrounded was once the capital of a great empire.

He who reads little will know little.

This is the God whose altars ye have cast-down, and whose temple ye have defiled.

Speak, ye who know.

The man of whom you speak is very rich.

Let me see the horses which you bought.

Those things seemed the best whose time was-gone-by⁹.

That which among good men is friendship, among bad is faction.

We will strive with all our might¹⁰ for the liberty which we have received from our ancestors.

I fear treason, which I am endeavouring to avoid by rapidity (of movement).

They carried their gold and silver, and other things which are considered of-most-value¹¹, to the royal abode.

They easily obtained what they sought.

There was a large and powerful town among vast solitudes, Caspa by name, of which Hercules is said to have been the founder.

What others (have learnt) by books, I have learnt by service.

⁶ To be dull, torpore.

⁷ Perire, use the perfect.

⁸ Peractus.

⁹ Effugere, pluperf.

¹⁰ Summa ope.

¹¹ Say, First.

That which they arrogate to themselves from another's valour, they will not allow me from my own.

That party prevailed in the senate, which preferred favour and bribery to truth.

He gives twice, who gives soon.

We seek liberty, which no good man loses except with his life¹².

'Twas I who broke that window.

The man who can dig will always gain a livelihood.

The horses he has bought are strong and handsome.

The house in which I live was built by Balbus himself.

I will buy the very ass on which he rides.

All things are profane there which with us are hallowed.

The very porches with which the temple was surrounded were an excellent outwork.

Britain is the largest of the islands which Roman knowledge embraces.

The Britons display more ferocity than the Gauls, as (men) whom prolonged peace has not yet enervated¹³.

Caligula was flattered by those whose children he had slain, and whose goods he had confiscated.

The picture he was speaking of was painted by Apelles.

I have forgotten all I have learnt.

CHAPTER II.

CORRELATIVES.

THE pronominal adjectives *the same* (*idem*), *such* (*talis*), *as great* or *so great* (*tantus*), *as many* or *so many* (*tot*), are not followed by a conjunction in Latin, as in English, but by their proper correlatives as they are called. Thus,

The same as becomes in Latin *idem qui**.

Such as becomes *talis qualis*.

¹² *Cum animâ simul.*

¹³ *Emollire.*

* *Idem*, however, may also be followed by the conjunction *ac*.

As great as becomes *tantus quantus*.

As many as becomes *tot quot*.

The correlatives, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*, follow the same rules as the relative *qui*. Thus,

- (1.) The correlative clause will be a complete sentence in itself.
- (2.) The correlative will stand first in its own clause.
- (3.) The correlative will agree in gender, number, and person, with its proper antecedent; while its case will depend on the position it fills in its own clause.

The following example is analyzed:

The calamity was not as great as we have seen before.

SUBJECT.		VERB.	OBJECT.	
as	The calamity (we)	was not have seen	..... (it)	as great before.

Clades ea non tanta erat, quantam antea vidimus.

Where *as it* is translated by *quantam*, correlative to *tanta*.

If there are two or more of the above antecedents in the principal clause, they must each be followed by their proper correlative: e. g.

In Germany the forests are as many, and as great, as in Gaul.

SUBJECT.		VERB.	OBJECT.	
as	The forests (they)	are (are)	..... .....	{ as many and as great in Germany, in Gaul.

In Germaniâ sylvæ tot, tantæque sunt, quot, quantæque in Galliâ.

It will be observed that in English each of the relatives, *qui* (relating to *idem*), *quantus*, *qualis*, *quot*, is rendered by the conjunction *as* with a pronoun either expressed or understood.

It has been shown in the chapter on the relative that the relative, when it describes a noun, is equivalent to the conjunction *and* with a personal pronoun; it has also been shown in this chapter that the correlatives *qui* (relating to *idem*), *quantus*, *qualis*, and *quot*, are equivalent to the conjunction *as*

with a personal pronoun: it is desirable to call attention to this again, as it will be referred to hereafter*.

Examples on Correlatives.

I am not such as I was.

There were as many opinions as men.

He will buy as many books as have been written.

I am as great a man as you.

Let every one drink as much as he wishes.

This is the same old man we saw at Capua.

You will be so-much¹ the safer, as you spare yourself less in the fight.

He is just such a man as his father was.

Such women as I have seen will never be seen again.

His boyhood and youth were such as I have shown.

By two acts, the one most disgraceful, the other illustrious, he has deserved at-the-hands-of² posterity just-so-much³ good reputation as bad.

Tares grow in the same furrow as wheat.

There are as great virtues in this one man, as there have been in all other generals whom we have seen or heard of.

It does not happen to-any-man-you-please to have such fortune, as (that) of Polycrates.

Hercules' exploits were as many, and as great, as have ever been heard-of.

The cruelty of this general towards prisoners was such as no one in any age has shown before.

Accordingly collect your strength, and show yourself such as you ought to be; not as daily idleness, and intercourse with wicked (men), have made you.

No one has ever ventured to wish-for so many and such great things, as the immortal gods have granted to Cnæus Pompeius of their own accord.

* See Pt. III. ch. xix.

¹ Say, *By-so-much* (*tanto*).

² *Apud*.

³ Say, *Just so much* (*tantumdem*)
of good reputation, &c.

CHAPTER III.

QUESTIONS.

QUESTIONS are formed in English in two ways—

1. By means of an interrogative pronoun or adverb : e. g.

(i.) Who has spoken ?

(ii.) How long will you escape destruction ?

2. By placing the auxiliary verb before the subject : e. g.

(i.) Is there so great wrath in celestial minds ?

(ii.) Do you compare Virgil with Homer ?

The former of these methods calls for very little explanation.

The question, on being analyzed, will be very similar to a relative clause, and it will only be necessary to place the interrogative word first in the sentence, just as the relative was placed first in its clause.

As in English relative and interrogative words are the same, it will be necessary to remember that this is not always the case in Latin. Thus, the relative *who* is *qui*, but the interrogative *who* is *quis*; so the conjunction *when* is *quum*, but the interrogative *when* is *quando*, and so on. These distinctions must be learnt from the grammar or dictionary.

In translating questions of the second kind into Latin, they must be made to begin with *num*, *ne* (enclitic), or *nonne*.

Of these particles,

Ne merely shows that a question is intended and not a statement : e. g.

Rediitne incolumis ? has he returned in safety ?

Num expects the answer *no* : e. g.

Num rediit incolumis ? has he (really) returned in safety ?

Nonne expects the answer *yes*, and corresponds to the English *not* in a question : e. g.

Si ille dixerit, nonne tu respondebis ? If he speaks, will not you answer ?

If the question consists of two or more clauses linked to-

gether, or must be translated by *an* or *ne* *; and *or not* by *annon* or *necne* †: e. g.

- (i.) Will you have peace, or war?
 Pacemne, an bellum
 Pacem, an bellum } mavultis?
 Pacem, bellumne }
- (ii.) Will you have peace or not?
 Pacem vultis, annon?

It will be seen that the interrogative particle may be omitted in the former member of a double question.

Examples on Questions.

Who has spoken?
 What said Caius?
 Do you wish to return?
 How many changes have we seen?
 Have you not heard the reports?
 Where are the ambassadors?
 Can good be an evil to any man?
 Does pleasure make a man better or¹ more praiseworthy?
 Is that your fault or ours?
 Must I not bewail² such a young man as Caius?
 Where are those men whom I saw at Philippi?
 What do you accuse me of³, if I do my duty?
 Do you not see me still panting from the race?
 Have you then become rich?
 Why did you not come?
 Is it seemly for you to oppose my precepts?
 Which of these two men shall we imitate?
 Have they not divided the spoil?
 Do you prefer Cæcuban or Falernian⁴?
 He that made the eye, shall he not see?

* *Ne*, however, must not follow *ne*.

† *Necne* is used in indirect questions only. See Pt. II. ch. v.

¹ *Aut*, not *an*, since it does not introduce a new clause.

² Pres. subjunctive.

³ Say, *What do you accuse to me?*

⁴ Understand wine (*vinum*).

Is this a day to be marked with chalk, or charcoal?

You are not mad are you^a?

Do ye hear, or does a pleasing madness mock me?

Why do we boldly 'aim-at' many things in our short life?

What exile from his country has also escaped himself?

How long shall we suffer this, my brave men?

Do you, Quirites, born for empire, endure slavery with a quiet mind?

Who are these who have taken-possession-of^b the state?

Do you wish to hear me, or not?

CHAPTER IV.

INDIRECT OR OBLIQUE SENTENCES

(ORATIO OBLIQUA).

Indirect Enunciation (Enunciatio Obliqua).

SOMETIMES when looking for the subject or object of a verb, we find not a noun, nor even a verb-noun, but a complete sentence.

Such a sentence is called oblique or indirect^c: e. g.

(i.) It was reported that Cæsar had conquered the Gauls.

(ii.) He will hear that the citizens have whetted the steel.

(iii.) I know not what is the opinion of the people concerning me.

In (i.), on asking the question for the subject, e. g. What was reported? we get for answer,

Cæsar had conquered the Gauls,

which, it will be observed, is a complete sentence in itself.

In (ii.) on asking the question for the object, e. g. He will hear what? we get for answer,

The citizens have whetted the steel.

^a What interrogative particle is used, when the answer *no* is expected?

^b Use an adjective agreeing with *we*.

^c *Jaculari*.

^d *Occipere*.

* Provided it does not represent the exact words of any speaker. See Pt. II. ch. vii.

And in (iii.) the object of the verb, *know not*, is the question,

What is the opinion of the people concerning me?

Sometimes whole pages consist of indirect sentences linked together, forming a speech or report.

Indirect sentences are formed in different ways, according as they are statements, questions, or commands.

We will first deal with the indirect or oblique statement, or as it is sometimes called *enunciatio obliqua*.

In turning oblique statements into Latin, two rules must be observed, one for the principal verbs, the other for the subordinate verbs.

- (1.) The principal verbs must be in the infinitive mood, and their subjects and complements in the accusative case.

- (2.) The subordinate verbs must be in the subjunctive mood*.

The tenses will generally be unchanged; but it must be remembered that in the infinitive mood the present and imperfect tenses are the same, and also the perfect and pluperfect.

In English the future tense is often rendered obliquely by *would*: e. g.

Cæsar said that he would come.

The present tense is sometimes rendered by *should*: e. g.

It is disgraceful that men should (i.e. do) lie.

The subject of the principal verb in an oblique statement is generally expressed, even when it is a personal pronoun.

An oblique statement is usually introduced in English by the conjunction *that*; this word must not be translated into Latin.

Like the verb-noun infinitive, an indirect sentence often has the pronoun *it* placed in apposition to it, when standing in the place of subject to a verb: this pronoun is not to be expressed in Latin.

It will be found convenient to underline the oblique part of a sentence, and analyze it separately.

* The subordinate clauses are mentioned as adjectival, and adjectival and adverbial clauses. verbal clauses will be discussed in Relative clauses have already been ch. ix.

The following examples are analyzed.

(i.) It was reported that *Cæsar had conquered the Gauls*.

(ii.) He will hear that *the citizens have whetted the steel*.

(iii.) They heard that *the soldiers who were at Locri were all being carried over into Italy*.

(iv.) Cæsar said that *he would come*.

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	{ <i>Cæsar had conquered the Gauls</i>	was reported.	
(ii.)	{ <i>Cæsar</i>	had conquered.	
	{ (He)	will hear	
	{ <i>The citizens</i>	have whetted	<i>the Gauls.</i>
	{ (They)	heard	<i>the citizens have whetted the steel.</i>
(iii.)	{ <i>The soldiers all</i>	were being carried over	<i>the steel.</i>
	{ who	were	<i>the soldiers, &c.</i>
	{ <i>Cæsar</i>	said	.....
(iv.)	{ he	would come.	<i>he would come.</i>

(i.) Nunciatum est *Cæsarem Gallos vicisse.*

(ii.) Audiet *cives acuisse ferrum.*

(iii.) *Milites* acceperunt, *qui Locris essent, omnes in Italiam transportari.*

(iv.) *Cæsar dixit se venturum esse.*

It will be seen that the principal verbs *vicisse, acuisse, transportari, venturum esse*, are all in the infinitive mood, while the subordinate verb *essent* is in the subjunctive.

Examples of Indirect Enunciation.

I believe you are lazy.

I hear that you have been again vanquished.

We hear that you caught seven fish.

I did not believe you would catch a single fish.

They say that fish are very cunning.

They say that their city will never be taken.

We know that men cannot see themselves.

You say you are a better ¹ general.

I said an older, not a better.

Do you believe that those islands will be submerged?

They say that the city will be taken; I cannot believe it will be burnt.

Do you think that he is an enemy?

Believe me that honesty is better than craft.

I hear that you and I, Sextius, are being deceived.

They say that they are happy.

We willingly confess that a good man is happier than a knave.

I do not think the same men are likely-to-return.

We know there is a God.

You said that you would finish the business alone.

It was reported that Carthage had been taken by Scipio.

They say that there is corn in Egypt.

Do you remember that he sold asses to that merchant?

I have heard the gods themselves cannot recall their gifts.

A messenger came to Rome, and reported that he had seen crowds of barbarians crossing the Ister.

I do not think that the city will be taken.

Do you think one thing is just at Rome, another in Sicily?

He is writing a pamphlet to prove that flowers can feel.

That prince of authors, the divine Julius, has handed-down (to us) that the affairs of the Gauls were formerly more

¹ *Peritor.*

prosperous, and hence it is credible that the Gauls even crossed into Germany.

The tablets are in the midst (of you), and-they cry-out that they are falsified² and interlined³.

It is clear that that money will not be returned.

The Romans are wont to say that their city is everlasting.

Who dared to say that Cæsar sent gifts so worthless?

I cannot believe that death is the end of all things.

I say that he alone is happy, who is contented with his lot.

They say there is no food left, we must eat our horses.

I confess that most books are hateful to me.

They think they are safe at last.

Cato exclaimed daily in the senate, that Carthage was to be blotted-out.

He has dared to say that you are mad.

They think that the souls of those slain in battle are immortal.

It seemed more expedient for⁴ all contingencies of the new dynasty⁵ that Titus should remain with the army.

You see other nations go to battle, the Catti to war.

It is certain that many kinds of wild-animals are produced in these forests, which are not seen in other parts.

They think there is something holy and prophetic in women; and they neither despise their advice, nor neglect their answers.

The ambassadors said that Hannibal, without the permission of the senate, had crossed, not only the Iberus, but also the Alps, and had waged war on his own account against the Saguntines.

I myself agree with the opinions of those who think that the Germans are tainted⁶ by marriages with no other nations⁷.

² *Corruptus.*

³ *Interlitus.*

⁴ *Ad.*

⁵ *Principatus.*

⁶ *Infectus.*

⁷ *Genitive.*

Let us consider that the body of brave men is mortal, but the motions of the soul and the glory of virtue is eternal.

They are so ignorant, that they do-not-know that Horace was a poet.

I have often heard from Agricola himself that Ireland could be conquered and held by a single legion and a few auxiliaries.

A persistent^s report, that he had been cut off by poison, increased their commiseration.

Know that illustrious men can exist even under bad princes.

Can it be true that the elephants which formerly inhabited Europe were covered with long hair?

Do you think that the Romans have the same valour in war, as licentiousness in peace?

Thales, the Milesian philosopher, used to say that it is of all things most difficult to know one's self, but very easy to admonish another.

Hannibal said he had seen many crazy old men, but no one who played-the-madman like Phormio.

CHAPTER V.

INDIRECT OR OBLIQUE SENTENCES.

Indirect Questions (Interrogatio Obliqua).

LET us consider the sentences—

(i.) It is uncertain who was speaking.

(ii.) I know not whether he is able to finish the matter alone.

In (i.) the question *who was speaking* stands as subject to the verb *is*; hence it is an indirect question.

In (ii.) the question *whether he is able to finish the matter alone* stands as object to the verb *know not*; hence this also is an indirect question.

In an indirect question the verb must always be in the subjunctive mood.

In other respects indirect questions are like direct questions.

^s *Constantes*.

The following examples are analyzed :

- (i.) It is uncertain *who was speaking*.
 (ii.) I know not *whether he is able to finish the matter alone*.

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	<i>Who was speaking</i> <i>Who</i>	is <i>was speaking.</i>	..... uncertain.
(ii.)	I <i>whether (he) alone</i>	know not <i>is able to finish</i>	<i>{ whether he is able to finish the matter alone. the matter.</i>

(i.) *Dubium est quis diceret.*

(ii.) *Nescio an negotium solus conficere possit.*

The direct question, *Who was speaking?* would be *Quis dicebat?* instead of *diceret*.

So, *Is he able to finish the matter alone?* would be *Negotiumne solus conficere potest?* not *possit*.

Examples of Indirect Questions.

It is uncertain what he will do in this matter.

Tell me ¹ who you are.

No one can tell how long he will live.

Ye see how great power he had, ye know what he has done.

He cried out that he wondered on what fate he had fallen.

What does it matter ² whether I perish by disease, or by theft and rapine.

The consul inquired why he, a private individual, was speaking publicly.

This story shows us what-sort-of a reward the wicked are wont to return for favours.

He inquired-of the consul whether it were allowed to fight out of the ranks against an enemy challenging ³ him.

Tarquin ventured to put it to the nation ⁴ whether they were willing he should reign.

Who knows whether the gods will grant what you ask?

¹ Dative.

³ *Provocans.*

² *What does it matter, quid refert.*

⁴ *To put it to the nation, ferre ad populum.*

Socrates, being asked of-what-country⁵ he was, answered of-the-world⁶.

He began to inquire of me whether I knew any⁷ Demænetus, a son of Strato.

Then they were removed from the senate-house, and the senators were asked what they thought was to-be-done in such a matter.

He knew what the barbarian tormentor was preparing for him.

I doubt whether the gods have denied them silver and gold in-anger, or in-favour⁸.

Let any one say about what matter he wishes to dispute.

Whether-of-the-two, death or life, be better, the gods know; for my part I think that no human being⁹ knows.

What does it matter whether you commit what you have to an abyss, or never use it.

Do you write back of how many¹⁰ you wish to be one?

You see what the cause is, now consider what is to-be-done.

Where are your books, boy? tell me where your books are.

Who is that old man? tell me what his name is.

You would inquire of me, Gratius, why I am so charmed with this man.

Who is ignorant what disasters our armies suffer on account of the avarice of their generals?

How he excels in prudence, how (he excels) in weight and fluency of speaking, you, Quirites, have often recognized from this very place.

It is difficult to say whether the enemy more fear his valour (when) fighting, or love his clemency (when) conquered.

We do not ask you how many the foe may be, but where they be.

The Athenians know what is right, but neglect to do it.

⁵ *Cujas*.

⁶ *Mundanus*, adjective agreeing with *citizen* understood.

⁷ *Whether any, Ecquis*.

⁸ *Say, Angry, or propitious*.

⁹ *Human being, homo*.

¹⁰ *Say, The how-manyeth (quotus) you wish to be*.

His slaves denied that they knew where he was.

I do not know whether ye be great and wise; men ye are not.

It was not-very ¹¹ certain whether the senate would approve such an action ¹², or whether they would reverse the decree of the consul.

It was uncertain whether it were safer to fly, or to remain.

I doubt whether to trust less to their valour, or to their good faith.

CHAPTER VI.

OBLIQUE OR INDIRECT SENTENCES.

Indirect Commands (Petitio Obliqua).

WHEN a sentence stands as subject or object to verbs of asking, commanding, advising, encouraging, and such like, it will generally be in the nature of a command. This is what is meant by an oblique command: e. g.

(i.) All cry out he should perform what he had undertaken.

(ii.) Tithonus prayed the gods that he might live for ever.

In (i.) the object of the verb *cry out* *, is the indirect command, *he should perform what he had undertaken*.

In (ii.) the verb *prayed* acts on two objects, viz., the person, *gods*, and the thing, *that he might live for ever*; this latter being an indirect command.

An oblique command is formed in Latin by *ut* (commanding), or *ne* (forbidding), followed of course by the subjunctive mood.

The conjunction *ut*, however, is very often omitted.

As these verbs of asking, &c., are usually followed in English by an infinitive, it is necessary to guard against mistaking this construction for a prolate infinitive: e. g.

(i.) The senate commanded the consuls to *levy an army*.

(ii.) I warn you *not to depart from Rome*.

¹¹ *Parum*.

¹² *A disgraceful act, flagitium*

* It will be noticed that the ob-

ject of the verb *cry out* can only be an object of kindred meaning.

In these examples, the infinitives *to levy an army, not to depart from Rome*, are not prolate, but they are indirect commands; and stand as objects to the verbs *commanded*, and *warn*, respectively.

It will at once be remarked that these infinitives may very properly be considered as infinitives expressing purpose. This is really the case; and, in fact, we have already seen that an infinitive expressing purpose is translated into Latin in precisely the same way as an oblique command, viz., by *ut* or *ne*, with the subjunctive mood.

There are some verbs of asking, &c., which are not followed by an oblique command in Latin, but by the "accusative with infinitive" construction. These can only be learnt by experience. It may be observed, however, that the constructions which follow any particular verb will always be found by looking out the verb in a Latin-English dictionary.

Since indirect sentences always occupy the place of nouns, they are called substantival sentences.

The following sentences are analyzed:

(i.) All cry out *he should perform what he had undertaken*.

(ii.) I warn you *not to depart from Rome*.

	SUBJECT.	VEEB.	OBJECT.	
(i.)	All	cry out	{ <i>he should perform</i>	
	(<i>he</i>)	<i>should perform</i>	{ <i>what he had undertaken.</i>	
	(<i>he</i>)	<i>had undertaken</i>	(<i>that</i>)	
(ii.)			<i>which.</i>	
	I	warn	{ <i>you</i>	
			{ <i>not to depart from Rome.</i>	
	<i>that</i> (<i>you</i>)	<i>must not depart</i>	.....	<i>from Rome.</i>

(i.) Omnes clamant *praestaret quod recepisset.*

(ii.) Moneo te *ne Româ discedas.*

Examples of Indirect Commands.

I advise you to depart.

He warned them not to bring the state into extreme danger by their disagreement and obstinacy.

Permit me to prevail-on¹ you, father.

On his way Orgetorix persuaded Casticus to seize the kingdom, which his father had held previously.

The changes of the year warn us not to hope for immortality.

I pray you all, do not let the danger be increased by the fatigue and hunger of the soldiers.

Take care my son has the money to-day.

He bade them choose whether they would have peace, or war.

That is an old maxim, that friends should desire the same thing.

The senate passed a decree that the consuls must see the commonwealth took no harm.

Fabius forbade his soldiers to leave the camp.

I only beg this of you, accept from me this joy which I bring you², and believe that I saw your son lately alive and well³.

He said they should go at once, and not exasperate⁴ the wrath of the conqueror by remaining.

The answer of the oracle was, that they should entrust their lives and property to their wooden walls.

Cæsar commanded his men to refresh themselves before the battle.

I advise you, learners, to love your teachers not less than your studies.

The senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy in the next ten days.

Jugurtha by forced marches outstripped Metellus, and exhorted the townspeople to defend their walls.

I charge you, do not allow the enemy to retire unpunished.

With a downcast countenance and suppliant voice, he begged the conscript fathers not to believe any thing about him hastily⁵.

In great perils the senate used to decree that the consuls should take care⁶ the state received no harm.

¹ *Exorare.*

² Dative.

³ *Sopes.*

⁴ *Asperare.*

⁵ *Temere.*

⁶ *I take care—do operam.*

Catiline gave orders that Statilius and Gabinius, with a large band, should set fire to twelve convenient places in the city⁷, so that in the commotion access would become easier to the consul and to others for whom assassination⁸ was arranged. Cethegus should lay-siege-to⁹ the door of Cicero, and attack him by force, and one (should attack) one man (and one another); the sons of families, of whom the greater part were of the nobility, should slay their parents; and, every thing being smitten at once with death and conflagration, they should break-away to Catiline.

Tarquin informed the Veientes that he was seeking to recover his kingdom, and wished to punish his ungrateful fellow-citizens: they should bring aid (he said), and help him, they should go also to avenge¹⁰ their ancient wrongs, their legions so often cut-to-pieces, their territory taken away.

Go, tell the Romans that thus the gods will (it), my city Rome must be the capital of the world; they must practise, then, the art of war; they must know, and hand the same down to their posterity, that no human resources can withstand the Roman arms.

CHAPTER VII.

SPEECHES.

SOMETIMES the exact words of a speaker are reported; thus instead of saying—

He cried out that he was a Roman citizen,
we may have—

He cried out, "I am a Roman citizen."

The same form of expression is allowed in Latin; thus, instead of saying—

⁷ Say, *Of the city.*

⁸ *Insidiae.*

⁹ *Obsidere.*

¹⁰ *Ultum.* Supine after a verb of motion.

Clamavit se civem esse Romanum,
we may have—

Clamavit, "civis Romanus sum."

It is clear that "*civis Romanus sum*" in the latter sentence is a direct statement, although it stands as object (of kindred meaning) to the verb *cried out*.

We may observe that in Latin the indirect form is generally preferred.

Speeches very often appear in an indirect form even in English, as will be seen by referring to almost any newspaper; and it will be observed that, although an indirect speech represents the exact substance of the speaker's remarks, it does not represent his exact words.

It is a very useful exercise to change a speech or report into an indirect form. This may be done by making it the object of some such verb as *he said*, or *he says*.

Rules to guide the beginner in this would only encumber him; the practical command of language which he possesses will be found amply sufficient for the purpose; he has only to imagine himself relating a story, and to commence with the words *he says*, or *he said*, and he will have no difficulty, in making the required alterations.

It will generally be found safest to transform the whole speech, before commencing to analyze it.

Speeches generally consist of statements, questions, and commands, mingled together; and care must be taken to discriminate between these different forms of sentences, when they are turned into Latin.

Two examples are transformed to serve as models.

Example of a Speech in "Oratio Recta."

Diogenes was wont to argue thus, "How much do I surpass the King of the Persians in my life and fortune: nothing is wanting to me, to him nothing will ever be sufficient; I do not desire pleasures with which he can never be satisfied, and my pleasures he can in no way attain."

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
	Diogenes	was wont to argue	..... (thus).
How much	I	surpass	the King of the Persians { in my life and fortune :
	nothing	is wanting	..... to me,
	nothing	{ will ever be sufficient	..... to him;
	I	do not desire	pleasures
	he	{ can never be satisfied	..... with which,
	and he	can attain	my pleasures in no way.

Diogenes disputare solebat, "quanto regem Persarum ego vitâ fortunâque supero; mihi nihil deest, illi nihil satis unquam erit; ego voluptates non desidero quibus nunquam satiari ille potest, meas is consequi nullo modo potest."

The same Speech transformed into "Oratio Obliqua."

Diogenes was wont to argue *how much he surpassed the King of the Persians in his life and fortune: to himself nothing was wanting, to the other nothing would ever be sufficient; he did not desire pleasures with which the other could never be satisfied, and his pleasures the King could in no way attain.*

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
	Diogenes	was wont to argue	..... (thus).
How much	he	surpassed	{ the King of the Persians { in his life and fortune ;
	nothing	was wanting	..... to himself,
	nothing	{ would ever be sufficient	..... to the other ;
	he	did not desire	pleasures,
	the other	{ could never be satisfied	..... with which,
(and)	the King	could attain	his (pleasures) in no way.

Diogenes disputare solebat, *quanto regem Persarum vitâ fortunâque superaret; sibi nihil dessee, illi nihil satis unquam fore; se voluptates non desiderare, quibus nunquam satiari ille posset, suas eum consequi nullo modo posse.*

Oratio Recta.

Do you hope that they are likely to be faithful to you, whom you have won over to yourself by money? You must know that affection is not bought by gold, but by virtues.

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(you)	do you hope	{ they are likely to be faithful to you, whom you have won over to yourself by money.
(you)	must-know	{ affection is not bought by gold, but by virtues.

Sperasne eos tibi fideles esse futuros, quos pecuniâ tibi conciliaveris? Scito amorem non auro emi, sed virtutibus.

The substantival clauses have not been analyzed, as it is supposed that this will no longer be required on every occasion.

Oratio Obliqua.

Did he hope that they were likely to be faithful to him, whom he had won over to himself by money; he must know that affection is not bought by gold, but by virtues.

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(He)	did he hope	{ they were likely to be faithful to him, whom he had won over to himself by money.
(he)	must know	{ affection is not bought by gold, but by virtues.

An speraret eos sibi fideles esse futuros, quos pecuniâ sibi conciliasset? Sciret* amorem non auro emi, sed virtutibus.

It is also a very useful exercise to change an indirect speech

* It may be observed that, in an indirect command, *ut* (but not *ne*) is always omitted, if the command be real, i. e. if it be such as would be expressed by the *imperative mood* in a direct sentence; or, in other words, if it be intended to represent in an indirect form the exact words of the speaker.

or report into the exact words used by the speaker. This is an exercise which will best be performed, as opportunity occurs, in a construing lesson ; or any of the examples given in this book on indirect sentences, whether statements, questions or commands, may be used for this purpose.

Examples of Speeches to be transformed into "Oratio Obliqua."

He said, "A victory is begun soon enough, when provision has been made¹ that we be not conquered."

"Italy has been subdued by us," they said, "and all the fortune of the war is in our hands."

The legions murmured, "We are being deprived of the help² of our bravest men ; those veterans, victors in so many wars, are being drawn away as-it-were from the line-of-battle, after³ the enemy is in sight."

The sentinels endeavoured⁴ to excuse their fault by accusing their leader. "We were ordered to be silent" (said they) "lest we should disturb his rest, and thus, through omitting the watchword and challenges⁵, we fell asleep."

"You yourself," said they, "are certainly an old man, and sated both with prosperity and adversity, but what a name, what a position will you leave to your son Germanicus ? now they promise you wealth and safety, but, when Vespasian has entered-on the imperial-power, there will be no security to himself, or his friends, or even to the army, while you are alive."

"Let no one," said the consul, "sell bread in the camp, or any other baked food. Let not hucksters⁶ follow the army. Let no private soldier in the camp, or on the march⁷, have a slave or beast of burden."

Marius thus charged us : "Do not court⁸ any one except the

¹ Say, *It has been provided.*

² Abl.

³ Abl. abs.

⁴ Imperf.

⁵ *Watchword and challenges, Signum et voces.*

⁶ *Labi in somnum.*

⁸ *In agmine.*

⁷ *Lixae.*

⁹ *Colere.*

Roman people ; do not accept new alliances or new treaties ; there will be protection enough in our friendship."

In a few days Jugurtha sent messengers to Rome with much gold and silver, and said to them, "first satisfy my old friends with presents, and then acquire new ones."

"What hope," I say, "is there of trust or agreement ? they wish to rule, you to be free ; they to do injustice, you to prevent it. Can peace or friendship exist for minds so diverse ?"

"We are uncertain," they said, "whether we be more straitly¹⁰ pressed by famine or by sword."

"Take care," said Cicero, "that by forbidding men to speak freely in the senate, you do not raise a voice even outside the senate house."

"You must remain in the palace, and not go-out to the enraged soldiers. You should give room for the repentance of the badly-disposed and for the agreement of the well-disposed. Crimes gain-strength by hasty-action¹¹, good counsels by delay. Finally you will have the same facility for going out presently, if there be need ; but your retreat, if you should repent¹² (having gone out) will be in the power of another."

Many prodigies were reported in the city. "In the porch of the Capitol the reins of the chariot, on which Victory stood, had been thrown-down: from the chapel of Juno had rushed forth a form greater than human: the statue of the divine Julius on the island of the river Tiber had been turned from the west to the east on a cloudless and tranquil day: an ox had spoken in Etruria : there had been strange births of animals."

Hating the unaccustomed labour of military-service, they began to demand peace. "It is an island," said they, "which we inhabit, and Germany and its mighty legions¹³ is far off ; even countries which infantry and cavalry protect have

¹⁰ *Acrius.*

¹¹ *Festinatio.*

¹² *If you should repent, Si poeniteat.*

¹³ *Say, Might (vis) of legions.*

been ravaged and plundered by the fleet: let us then remain quiet, and not provoke so terrible a foe."

The Roman emperor, but now the lord of the human race, was going forth from the seat of his power. Passing among his soldiers, the very women of his family looking-on, he said, "I am yielding for the sake of peace and the commonwealth. Retain only a kindly remembrance of me: pity my brother, my wife, and the harmless age of my children."

"Nothing," they cried, "can withstand our valour. We must penetrate Caledonia, and discover at length, in our continuous course of victory, the boundary of Britain."

"It is not expedient," said Regulus, "that the Carthaginian captives should be restored; they are young, and good officers¹⁴, I am broken-down¹⁵ with old age."

"Conscript Fathers, Micipsa my father (when) dying charged me that I should strive to be as much¹⁶ use¹⁷ as possible to the Roman people, to receive¹⁸ you into the place of my kindred, you (into the place) of my connexions; if I did this, in your friendship (he said) I had an army, wealth, and defences for my kingdom. But while I was turning-over¹⁹ the commands of my parent, Jugurtha, the greatest-villain²⁰ of all the earth supports, despising²¹ your sovereignty, drove (me) out from the kingdom and all my fortune, me, the grandson of Masinissa, an ally and friend to the Roman people."

"Tell Aulus that, although I have²² himself and his army shut-in by famine and sword, yet I am not unmindful of human vicissitudes²³. If he will make a treaty with me, I will pass them all under the yoke in safety; in addition to this²⁴ he must depart from Numidia in ten days."

When the disaster was announced, Otho consoled his brother's

¹⁴ *Duces.*

¹⁵ *Confectus.*

¹⁶ *As much as possible, quam maximè.*

¹⁷ *Usui.* Dat. of compl.

¹⁸ *Ducers.*

¹⁹ Say, *Which (commands, &c.), when I was turning over (agitare).*

²⁰ Say, *The most villainous.*

²¹ Abl. *aba.*

²² *Tenore.* ²³ *Res.*

²⁴ *In addition to this, præterea.*

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION

1895

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION

1895

THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR LENOX TILDEN FOUNDATION

LE 400

PREFACE

Most masters will admit that boys' elementary Latin Composition principally ing the structure of their own language Latin at an early age without any Grammar, for it is assumed that they during their study of Latin; and they deavoured to apply the same, when without being led to perceive that the most words must be the same, when employed. Now none of the exercises for men who have commenced the study of Latin seems to recognize this deficiency: they are for the boys for whom they are actually intended, whatever be the difficulty of the acquisition of knowledge is concerned; that, whatever be the difficulty of the acquisition of a boy's early life is practically wasted. Success is attained at last, not a word being derived from the teacher, as he has been at length forced themselves upon the learner and enabled him unconsciously to form a good Now it appears that a great deal of what be saved even to a clever boy. If he is aright from the beginning. If he is not English sentences before turning them into Latin perceive that certain fixed principles govern

son (saying), "Will Vitellius be of so ruthless a temper, that he will not even grant me this favour for the preservation of his family²⁵? I deserve the clemency of the victor by my hastened departure, for I have cast away my latest²⁶ chance for the state, not in the extremity of my despair²⁷, but while my army is demanding battle. Enough fame has been attained for myself, enough nobility for my posterity. After the Julii, the Claudii, the Servii, I have been the first to bring the empire into a new family. Hold-on-to²⁸ your life then with courage unbroken²⁹, and never either entirely forget, or remember too (vividly), that Otho was your uncle."

I will claim for myself no magnanimity or moderation; for indeed³⁰, there is no need to recount (one's) virtues³¹ in a comparison with Otho³². The vices in which alone he boasts have overturned the empire, even when he acted-the-part-of³³ the Emperor's friend. Should he deserve the sovereignty by his bearing and gait, or by that³⁴ womanish adornment (of his)? They are deceived, on whom luxury imposes by a show of liberality; such-as-he will know (how) to squander, will not know (how) to give. Already is he revolving in his mind debauches and revels, these he thinks the prize of sovereignty; and the enjoyment of them shall be his, the shame and dishonour ours: for no one has ever exercised in a worthy manner³⁵ the power obtained by crime.

The assent of human kind declared Galba Cæsar, Galba with your consent (declared) me. To this day your good-faith and reputation has remained unsullied. Less than thirty fugitives and deserters have made-over the empire: do you admit the precedent, and do you make the crime your-own³⁶ by remaining-quiet?

²⁵ Say, *For his family preserved.*

²⁶ *Novissimus.*

²⁷ Say, *In my extreme despair.*

²⁸ *Capescere.*

²⁹ *Animo erecto.*

³⁰ *Negue enim.*

³¹ Latin, *T.ere* is (no) need by

the relation of virtues. Cf. Pt. III. ch. viii.

³² Say, *Of Otho.*

³³ *Agere.*

³⁴ *Iste*, implying contempt.

³⁵ *Bonis artibus.*

³⁶ *Communis.*

CHAPTER VIII.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

IN English, if we wish to describe two consecutive actions, we sometimes use a past participle to describe the first of them, and a verb to describe the second: e. g.

Cæsar, having conquered the Gauls, returned to Rome. Here *having conquered* is the past participle, and *returned* is the verb.

In Latin there is no past participle belonging to the active voice, except in the case of deponent verbs.

If, however, it be required to translate a past participle into Latin, it may be done in one of two ways, which we will illustrate from the above example. This sentence will become in Latin, either—

Cæsar, when he had conquered the Gauls, returned to Rome. or, Cæsar, the Gauls having been conquered, returned to Rome.

The former of these methods consists in using an adverbial clause, linked on to the principal sentence by the conjunction *when*, and calls for no explanation.

The Latin will be—

Caesar, quum Gallos vicisset, Romam rediit.

The second method is an example of the ablative absolute, and is thus written—

Caesar, Gallis victis, Romam rediit.

Gallis victis is the ablative absolute; so called because there is no word to govern it.

The sentence may be analyzed as follows: either,

SUBJECT.		VERB.	OBJECT.	
	Cæsar	returned	.....	to Rome,
when	(he)	had conquered	the Gauls.	

Caesar, quum Gallos vicisset, Romam rediit.

or,

Cæsar	returned	{ to Rome, having conquered the Gauls. }
-------	----------	-------	---

Caesar, Gallis victis, Romam rediit.

The most usual form of the ablative absolute is that given above, in which a past participle is put in the ablative case to agree with a noun ; but, instead of the past participle, we may have any other participle, or an adjective, or even another substantive. Thus,

Caesare venturo may be translated *Cæsar being about to come*, or, *now that Cæsar is coming*.

Te redeunte may be translated *you returning*, or, *when you are returning*.

Consule Manlio may be translated, *Manlius being consul*, or, *in the consulship of Manlius*.

As the ablative absolute is of frequent occurrence in Latin to express the former of two consecutive actions, it may be as well to point out here the difference between the Latin, Greek, and English languages in this respect.

In English we should say, *finish your work and go*, using two verbs.

In Greek, *having finished your work go*, using a past active participle and a verb.

In Latin, there being no past active participle, we should say either,

When you have finished your work, go.
or, *Your work being finished, go.*

The latter being of course an ablative absolute.

It must not be forgotten that deponent verbs are active in meaning, and hence also they possess an active past participle: e. g.

Cæsar, having set out from Gaul, and crossed the Rubicon, came to Rome.

Here the verb *to set out* (*proficiscor*) is deponent, and thus the Latin becomes—

Cæsar a Galliâ profectus, Rubicone trajecto, Romam venit.

The verb *trajicio* is not deponent, and hence the use of an ablative absolute (*Rubicone trajecto*) is necessary.

Examples on the Ablative Absolute.

Having drawn their swords, they made a charge on the enemy.

These things were done in the consulship of Marius.

Having changed their design, the enemy began to pursue and harass our troops.

All things being prepared for¹ their departure, they named a day on which they should all assemble on² the bank of the Rhone.

That day was March 26th, in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius.

The enemy being routed, the cavalry would-not³ pursue.

Then, the signal being given, the Carthaginians whom Hannibal had kept⁴ drawn-up for this (purpose)⁵ sprang up on all sides.

Fallen is all hope and the fortune of our name, now that Hasdrubal is slain.

Having set out from the camp, they marched twelve miles that night, with Aulus as their guide.

The rites having been duly performed, and the multitude called to council, he explained what he had done.

Then the Augur, having transferred the trumpet into his left hand, and placed his right on the head of Numa, prayed thus.

It is necessary to throw-aside all the greatest virtues, if pleasure be-supreme⁶.

Even a coward will fight, when all hope of safety is lost.

Having said this, he dismissed the ambassadors and prepared for war⁷.

It is not expedient to desert the bank of the Rhine, now that nations so hostile are likely-to-break-in⁸.

¹ *Ad.*

² *Apud.*

³ *Say, Were unwilling.*

⁴ *Retinere.*

⁵ *For this purpose, ad hoc.*

⁶ *Say, Pleasure being-supreme (dominare).*

⁷ *Say, Prepared war.*

⁸ *Future participle.*

Precepts and arts avail nothing, unless nature assist⁹.

When this battle was reported beyond the Rhine, the Suevi, who had arrived at the banks of the river, began to return home.

Cæsar, having finished two very great wars in one summer, led his army into winter-quarters.

Having arranged matters, the king departed home.

Throwing away all their baggage, they loaded themselves and their beasts-of-burden with water alone.

Having marched all night, he halted. On the next (night) he did the same thing.

Time and place being appointed, they came to the conference.

Jugurtha, perceiving the vanity and want-of-skill¹⁰ of the legate, (proceeded) craftily¹¹ to increase his infatuation¹².

Whilst they were turning-over these (matters), the good fortune of the commonwealth at length prevailed.

Sisenna, fearing violence, left the island secretly and fled.

All the-most-worthless¹³, scorning their national religions, used to carry thither offerings.

Peace being established throughout Italy, foreign cares returned.

And so, having pitched his camp, as I have said, before the walls of Jerusalem, Titus displayed his legions drawn-up (in order of battle).

The Jews were drawn-up under the very walls, ready-to-venture¹⁴ farther if their affairs were prosperous.

Having bought the right of fortifying their city, they built walls in peace as-if for war.

A night was chosen dark with clouds ; and carried-down by the stream, they entered the entrenchment, no one hindering them.

Having cut the ropes of the tents, they slew the soldiers cooped-up¹⁴ in their own dwellings.

⁹ Say, *Unless nature assisting.*

¹² *Amentia.*

¹⁰ *Imperitia.*

¹³ Say, *Every most worthless (man).*

¹¹ Say, *Crafty (subdolos).*

¹⁴ *Coopertus.*

CHAPTER IX.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

CONJUNCTIONS are used to link together words or sentences.

Now conjunctions are of two sorts :

1. Those which link together words merely, or sentences independent of one another and of equal grammatical value, such as *and, or, but, &c.*

2. Those which link on clauses qualifying or extending the meaning of the principal sentence, such as *when, in-order-that, although, &c.*

Conjunctions of the former class are called co-ordinative, while those of the latter class are called sub-ordinative.

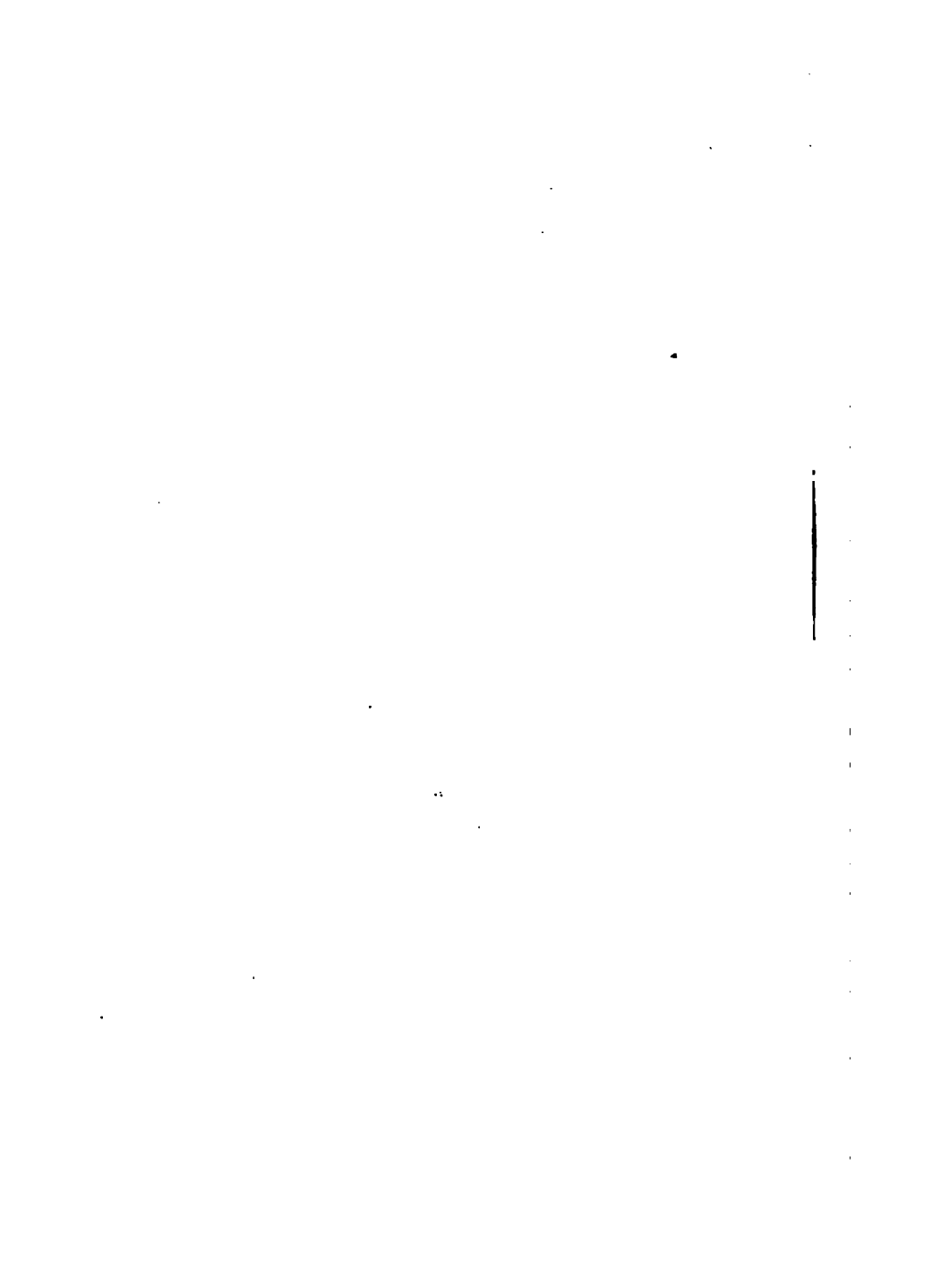
The clauses linked on by sub-ordinative conjunctions are called adverbial clauses, because they qualify the meaning of parts of the principal sentence like adverbs.

Although it has been thought right to point out this distinction here, it will not be found necessary to compel attention to it while it continues to present any difficulty.

Practically all conjunctions may be regarded as linking on fresh sentences, and each sentence so linked on may be analyzed separately.

The conjunction must be written in the column on the extreme left reserved for this purpose, and the only difficulty will be in determining whether the verb is to be in the indicative or subjunctive mood. This will be learnt by referring to the lists of conjunctions in any grammar.

The place of the conjunction is generally first in its own clause, but some few, like our English *however*, stand second.



PREFACE.

Most masters will admit that boys experience difficulty in elementary Latin Composition principally from not understanding the structure of their own language. They commence Latin at an early age without any knowledge of English Grammar, for it is assumed that this will grow upon them during their study of Latin; and they spend years in endeavouring to apply certain rules which they learn by heart, without being led to perceive that the grammatical value of most words must be other than, whatever be the language employed. Now none of the exercise books at present in use seems to recognize this difficulty; they are all adapted rather for men who have commenced the study of Latin late in life than for the boys for whom they were actually intended. The result is that whatever be the difficulties which a mental discipline, as far as the acquisition of a second language is concerned, a considerable period of a boy's early life is unnecessarily wasted. In many instances, more is attained at present, without any such assistance derived from the teacher, than is because repeated examples have at length forced themselves upon the observation of the learner, and enabled him to comprehend the system for himself.

Now it appears that a more systematic method of teaching might be employed to overcome this difficulty, and the observation more directed to the point of the difficulty. If the teacher could give the English sentence, and the Latin sentence, and the Latin word, and point out the connection between the two languages, and

A few sentences containing adverbial clauses are analyzed.

- (i.) When these defeats, one upon another, were reported at Rome, an overwhelming grief and terror took hold on the city.
- (ii.) If I had known that, I would never have turned my steps hither.
- (iii.) There is a river Arar which flows into the Rhone with incredible sluggishness, so that it cannot be determined with the eye in which direction it is flowing.
- (iv.) Although glory has nothing in itself for which it should be acquired, yet it follows virtue as a shadow.

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	when	took hold on	the city,
(ii.)	if	were reported	.....
(iii.)		would never have turned	my steps
		had known	that.
	The river Arar	is	.....
	which	flows	.....
	<i>in which direction it is flowing</i>	cannot be determined	{ into the Rhone with
(iv.)	so that	has	{ incredible sluggishness,
	Although	should be acquired,	with the eye.
	for which	follows	nothing
	yet		in itself
			virtue
			as a shadow.

(i.) Hæc clades, alia super aliam, quum Romanam nunciatae essent, ingens luctus et pavor urbem cepit.

(ii.) Si id scissem, nunquam hac tulissem pedem.

(iii.) Flumen est Arar, quod in Rhodanum influit incredibili lentitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit.

(iv.) Quasi nihil habent in se gloria, cur expectatur, tamen virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur.

The adverbial clauses are,*

- (i.) *When these defeats, one upon another, were reported at Rome.*
- (ii.) *If I had known that.*
- (iii.) *So that it cannot be determined with the eye in which direction it is flowing.*
- (iv.) *Although virtue has nothing in itself for which it should be acquired.*

CHAPTER X.

ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH.

It will be found a useful exercise to analyze portions of English poetry occasionally, or of any Latin author which has been read by the class.

It will not generally be necessary to analyze short substantival clauses in full, when they occupy the place of subject or object in the sentence, but it will always be advisable to do so when they are in apposition to the subject or object : e. g.

Of all the wonders that I yet have seen,

This seems to me most strange, *that men should fear.*

Here the clause *that men should fear* is in apposition to *this*, the subject of the verb *appears*, and accordingly should be analyzed separately.

If, however, the oratio obliqua runs to any length, it will be advisable to analyze it separately in any case.

Adjectival and adverbial clauses should always be analyzed by themselves.

Two examples are added to serve as models.

Example of English Poetry Analyzed.

- 1 On what foundation stands the warrior's pride,
How just his hopes, let Swedish Charles decide ;

- A frame of adamant, a soul of fire,
No dangers daunt him, and no labours tire ;
5 O'er love, o'er fear, extends his wide domain,
Unconquer'd lord of pleasure, and of pain ;
No joys to him pacific sceptres yield,
War sounds the trump, he rushes to the field ;
Behold surrounding kings their powers combine,
10 And one capitulate, and one resign ;
Peace courts his hand, but spreads her charms in vain.
"Think nothing gain'd," he cries, "till nought remain,
On Moscow's walls till Gothic standards fly,
And all be mine beneath the Polar sky."
15 The march begins in military state,
And nations on his eye suspended wait ;
Stern famine guards the solitary coast,
And winter barricades the realms of frost ;
He comes, nor want nor cold his course delay ;
20 Hide, blushing Glory, hide Pultowa's day :
The vanquish'd hero leaves his broken bands,
And shows his miseries in foreign lands ;
Condemn'd a needy suppliant to wait,
While ladies interpose, and slaves debate.
25 But did not Chance at length her error mend ?
Did no subverted empire mark his end ?
Did rival monarchs give the fatal wound ?
Or hostile millions press him to the ground ?
His fall was destined to a barren strand,
30 A petty fortress, and a dubious hand ;
He left the name, at which the world grew pale,
To point a moral, or adorn a tale.

From "The Vanity of Human Wishes."—DR. JOHNSON.

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
and and and and and while and But No Rival or His he the	and stern famine winter He nor want nor cold blushing Glory the vanquished hero (he) a needy suppliant condemned } to wait ladies and slaves Chance subverted empire monarchs hostile million fall he world	the solitary coast, the realms of frost. his course; Paltowa's day: his broken bands, his miseries her error his end? the fatal wound? him the name which.
that (it) or (it)	might point might adorn	a moral, a tale.

OR,

⁴ The following clauses would, in analyzing English, naturally stand in the place assigned to them; it has been thought advisable, however, to treat them also in the method which has been employed hitherto.

⁵ Dr. Johnson doubtless had in mind the verb *palliate*, which is used in a transitive sense.

CHAPTER XI.

EXAMPLE OF LATIN PROSE ANALYZED.

PRIUSQUAM satis certa consilia essent, repens alia nunciatur 1
clades: *quattuor millia equitum missa ad collegam a Servilio*
consule in Umbria, quo post pugnam ad Trasymenum auditam
averterant iter¹, *ab Hannibale circumventa*. Ejus rei fama varie
homines affectit. Pars, occupatis majore aegritudine animis, 5
levem ex comparatione priorum ducere² recentem equitum
jacturam: pars non id, quod acciderat, per se aestimare³, sed, *ut*
in affecto corpore quamvis levis causa magis, quam valido gravior,
sentiretur, ita tum aegrae et affectae civitati quodcunque adversi
inciderit, non rerum magnitudine, sed viribus extenuatis, quae nihil, 10
*quod aggravaret, pati possent, aestimandum esse*⁴. Itaque ad re-
medium jam diu neque desideratum nec adhibitum, dictatorem
dicendum, civitas confugit; et quia et consul aberat, a quo uno
dici posse videbatur, nec per occupatam armis Punicis Italiam
facile erat *aut nuncium aut litteras mitti*, nec dictatorem populus 15
creare poterat, quod nunquam ante eam diem factum erat, pro-
dictatorem populus creavit Q. Fabium Maximum, et magistrum
equitum M. Minucium Rufum. Hisque negotium ab senatu
datum⁵, *ut muros turesque urbis firmarent, et praesidia disponent,*
quibus locis videretur, pontesque rescinderent fluminum. 20

LIVY, lib. xxii. 8.

¹ This relative clause is not indirect; it is merely as it were a note added by the author, and thus the verb *averterant* is indicative and not subjunctive.

² *Ducere, aestimare*, infinitives used predicatively in narration instead of finite verbs.

³ The object of the verb *aestimare*, is composite, the two parts, *id* and *ut in affecto re . . . aestimandum*

esse, being linked together by the conjunction *sed*. The construction at this point is by no means obvious; *id* might also perhaps be regarded as the subject of a verb *aestimandum esse* understood.

⁴ The following clauses, forming an indirect command, are in apposition to *negotium*.

They may, however, be regarded as adverbial.

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	
1 priusquam	Repens alia clades consilia <i>quattuor millia equitum missa ad collegam a Servilio consule</i>	nunciatur, essent <i>circumventa (esse)</i>	satis certa: <i>ab Hannibale in Umbria,</i>
quo	(illi) Ejus rei fama	avertent affecit	{ post pugnam ad Trasymenum auditan. varie.
5	Pars	ducere	{ levem ex comparatione prio- rum, occupatis majore acritudine animis:
sed, ut quam	pars quod <i>causa quamvis lenis gravior (causa)</i>	non aestimare acciderat, <i>sentiretur magis (sentiretur)</i>	per se, <i>in affecto corpore,</i> <i>in valido (corpore),</i>
ita tum	(id adversi)	aestimandum esse	{ non rerum magnitudine, <i>sed viribus extenuatis,</i>
10	quas quod <i>quodcumque adversi</i>	<i>pati possent aggravaret, inciderit</i>	<i>affectas civitati;</i> ad remedium jam neque desi- deratum diu nec adhibuit;
itaque	civitas	confugit	{ dictatorem dicendum;

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
et populus	creavit	{ Q. Fabium Maximum predictatorem et M. Minucium Rufum magistrum equitum,
quia et consul (dictator)	aberrat dici posse videbatur	..... a quo uno, (facile, per occupatam armis Punicis Italian,
nec aut nuncium aut litteras mitti	erat	..... ante eam diem.
nec populus	creare poterat { nunquam fac- tum erat }	dictatorem, his ab senatu,
quod	datum (est)	..... quibus locis,
Que ut (illi)	firmarent	..... muros turresque urbis,
et (illi)	disponerent	..... praesidia
(disponere praesidia)	videretur	..... fluminum pontes.
que (illi)	reeciderent	.....

CHAPTER XII.

MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

It is reported that Homer was blind.

He has sent-back hither the money, that it may be paid to Saurea for the asses.

He says he brings money for the slave, but that he does not know him, the master himself, however, he knows well.

A painter could not describe his figure more truly.

It has never been pleasing to the Romans that a general should be slain by his own (men).

He will prefer to die miserably, rather than not perform what he has promised.

It seemed to them more reverent to believe concerning the acts of the gods, than to understand.

Wherever the occasion demanded (it) a garrison was planted.

Whilst these things were going-on¹, Lucius Sulla, the quæstor, came into the camp with a great force-of-cavalry².

Neither valour nor arms sufficiently protected us, because the enemy were more in number, and scattered around on-all-sides.

On the third day active scouts showed themselves on-all-sides, and by this circumstance the foe was known to-be-at-hand.

When Hannibal was devastating the plains of Italy, he left the estate of Fabius untouched.

This affair seems to me to have been the cause of hurrying-on the crime.

In our consul were many good-qualities both of mind and body, but avarice choked them all³.

There is nothing more important to me than the authority of the senate.

When danger was-near, pride and envy fell-behind⁴.

¹ *Geri.*

² *Say, All which, &c.*

³ *Equitatus.*

⁴ *Post esse.*

Not without cause then has Epicurus ventured to say that a wise man is always in the midst of very many good things, because he is always in the midst of pleasures.

To this Cicero only answered: That it was not the custom of the Roman people to accept conditions from an armed foe.

There is no pomp in their funerals⁵, they only take care to burn the bodies of their illustrious men with particular woods.

The Germans deliberate on peace and war during their banquets: they deliberate while they cannot feign⁶, and decide when they cannot err.

It is well known that no cities are inhabited by the German nations, but that we have taught them to receive money and luxuries.

It is sweet to me to act-wildly⁷ when I have got-back my friend.

Ashes are carried back into the face of him who scatters them.

The army is most brave in danger which before the danger is most orderly⁸.

Some things a soldier ought to-be-ignorant-of, as well as⁹ to know.

As senators (spring) from you, so from senators spring princes.

Men inhabit that globe, which is called the earth.

Within the temple were no traces of a god; they found an empty shrine.

Fortune was present, even when skill failed.

Then said Maharbal: You know, Hannibal, (how) to conquer, to use your victory you do-not-know.

Many things at once incited Otho, luxury burdensome even to a prince, poverty scarcely to-be-borne by a private-person, wrath against Galba, and envy towards Piso.

Those who have ceased to fear will begin to hate.

⁵ *Genitive*

⁶ *Fingere.*

⁷ *Furere.*

⁸ *Quietus.*

⁹ *As well as, tam—quam.*

He is so blind that he cannot see a mountain.

You will more easily repress talents and industry than you will recall them.

In Britain plants grow quickly, but ripen slowly.

The cause of either circumstance is the same, the humidity of the earth and sky.

The Romans obtained both gold and silver in Britain.

Their courage came back to the Romans, and, secure of their safety, they began to fight for victory.

Frequently during those days he was accused in-his-absence before the emperor, and in-his-absence¹⁰ acquitted.

The cause of his peril was not any crime, or the complaint of any one injured, but his military renown, and a prince hostile to virtue.

He was comely rather than tall¹¹, there was nothing to inspire awe¹² in his countenance, the grace of his expression was eminent¹³. You would readily believe him a good man, and willingly, a great man.

Let us not beat him, lest he be angry.

I cannot believe that so great an army has surrendered without a blow.

His march was not indolent, and corrupted with luxury; he wore an iron breast-plate, and went on-foot¹⁴ before the standards, rough, unkempt, and unlike his reputation.

Sedition arose in the camp, because they were not led (to action) all-together¹⁵.

Do you dare to say that a province is more important than the city and the safety of the empire?

The brave and energetic cling to hope even against fortune, cowards and sluggards hurry-on through fear to despair.

He ordered all letters remarkable for zeal towards himself, or abuse against Vitellius, to be destroyed.

¹⁰ Say, *Absent*.

¹¹ Say, *More comely rather than taller*.

¹² Say, *There was nothing of fear*.

¹³ *Superesse*.

¹⁴ *Pedester*.

¹⁵ *Universi*.

If there be a choice of masters, it is more honourable to put-up-with the emperors of Rome than with the women of the Germans.

My respect for Vespasian is of-long-standing¹⁶, and, when he was a private-individual, we were called friends.

Our ancestors wished rather to imitate the good than to envy them.

In this way you would have received many more benefits, than you would have suffered wrongs up-to this time.

A few, to whom justice and equity¹⁷ were dearer than wealth, thought that the death of Hiempsal ought to-be-avenged¹⁸.

In the beginning the Gætuli and Libyes inhabited Africa, rough men, and uncultured, who had venison¹⁹ for food and the pasture of the ground, like cattle²⁰.

Catiline believed that through these (women) he could rouse the city slaves, burn the town, and either attach their husbands to himself, or slay them.

Avarice overthrows honour and probity; it teaches (us) instead of these to neglect the gods, and to hold all things venal.

Some few, to whom life was left, shut up in darkness passed a life, in²¹ grief and lamentation, more burdensome than death.

The Pythian Apollo gave forth a response that Sparta would perish by nothing else but avarice.

He has determined to give me a wife to-day: was it not right that I should have known before?

When that day which he had appointed with the ambassadors arrived, and they returned to him, he said he could not allow to any one a road through the province, and if they attempted to use violence²², he would prevent them.

When, through his scouts, Cæsar was informed²³ that the

¹⁶ *Vetus.*

¹⁷ *Aequum et bonum.*

¹⁸ Say, *Was to-be-avenged* (gerundive).

¹⁹ *Caro ferina.* Often *ferina* only, *caro* being understood.

²⁰ Say, *To whom venison was food, &c., as to cattle.*

²¹ *Cum.*

²² *To use violence, facere vim.*

²³ *I am informed, certior factus sum.*

enemy had now led three parts of their forces across the stream, but the other part was left on-this-side the river, having set out from the camp with three legions, he came upon that division which had not yet crossed.

The Æqui, elated with victory, threatened they would besiege Rome itself.

Herdonius said that he had taken-up the cause of all the most wretched²⁴, that he might restore to their country those banished by injustice, and take-away the heavy yoke from slavery.

When Metellus arrived in Africa, the army was given over to him by the proconsul Spurius Albinus, lazy, unwarlike, enduring neither of danger nor toil, more forward²⁵ with tongue than hand, a plunderer from its allies, and itself a prey to the foe.

The præfects of the king came up prepared to give provisions, to carry supplies, and to do every thing they were commanded.

Let us collect vessels of every sort, chiefly²⁶ wooden ones.

Jugurtha called out in Latin that our men were fighting in vain; Marius had been slain a little before by his hand: at-the-same-time he showed a sword smeared with gore, which he had covered-with-blood²⁷ in the fight.

The king, surrounded by cavalry, while he endeavoured to encourage his own men, and to hold-fast a victory already gained, every one being slain on his right and on his left, broke away alive among the weapons of his foes.

The Helvetii after his death, endeavoured to do that which they had determined.

There were in-all²⁸ two roads by which they could issue from their home.

And so our men, on the signal being given²⁹, made a charge upon the enemy.

²⁴ Say, *Of every very wretched*
(man).

²⁵ *Promptus.*

²⁶ *Pleraque.*

²⁷ *Cruentare.*

²⁸ *Omnino.*

²⁹ *Abl. aba.*

The Germans, according-to³⁰ their custom, formed column, and received the shock of the swords.

The Trojans, having disembarked, gain-possession-of the wished-for sand.

That one day's delay is believed with-sufficient-reason³¹ to have been the salvation of the republic.

Thou sleepest much, and drinkest often; and both these things are hurtful to the body.

Believe that every day has dawned upon you the last.

It is an instinct³² implanted in mortals to look with distempered vision on the recent good fortune of others, and to demand a limit of prosperity from none more than (those), whom they have seen on a level with themselves.

In that contest, the amphitheatre, a very beautiful work, situated without the walls, was burnt down; whether fired by the assailants while they hurled torches and missile fire on the besieged, or by the besieged while they defended themselves in like manner.

The populace of-the-town³³, prone to suspicion, believed that food for the fire had been brought by men from the neighbouring colonies, through envy and rivalry, because no pile in Italy was so capacious.

By whatever accident it happened, it was held of light account³⁴ as long as deeper-disasters³⁵ were feared: when security was restored, they grieved (for it), as though they could have suffered no more weighty (misfortune).

The day on which they fought³⁶ at Bedriacum, the inhabitants relate that a bird of strange appearance settled in a frequented place, near Regium Lepidum, and was not frightened nor driven away by the concourse of men or of birds hovering round (it), until Otho killed himself. Then it hurried-away³⁷ out of sight.

³⁰ *Ex.*

³¹ *Satis.*

³² *Natura.*

³³ *Municipalis.*

³⁴ *In levi.*

³⁵ *Atrociora.*

³⁶ *Pugnatum est.*

³⁷ *Say, Was snatched away (rapere).*

Not far from thence are plains, which formerly fertile, and adorned with great cities, have been consumed, they say, by lightning: and the traces (of this) remain. The very soil scorched in appearance has lost its productive power. Near that lake all things, whether produced spontaneously, or sown by the hand, be they scanty herbage, or flowers, as soon as they have developed into their usual form, fade away as it were to ashes.

The doors of the temple were suddenly thrown open, and a voice greater than human was heard (saying), "The gods are departing." At the same time there was a mighty stir of (persons) departing.

Fear being removed by the absence of the legate, the Britons began to discuss among themselves the evils of slavery, and to compare their wrongs.

Moved³⁸ by these (considerations), with Boadicea a woman of royal lineage as their leader³⁹, they all-at-once took-up arms, and attacking⁴⁰ the soldiers scattered among the forts, they drove-out the garrisons, and invaded the colony itself as the seat of their bondage.

If Paulinus had not come up in haste, when he learnt the disturbance of the province, Britain would have been lost.

Beginning with himself⁴¹ and his own, he first restrained his own household, (a thing) which to most men is not less difficult than governing a province.

Hitherto your generals have so contended with that king, that they have brought-back the trophies of victory, not victory.

When Cæsar was alive he was hated, when dead all men mourned his fate.

I am of those⁴² who admire the ancients. I do not however despise the wits⁴³ of our own times.

Go, said Paulus, warn the fathers to fortify the city, before Hannibal arrives victorious.

³⁸ *Instinctus.*

³⁹ *Abl. abs.*

⁴⁰ *Consectati.*

⁴¹ *Say, From himself.*

⁴² *Ex iis.*

⁴³ *Ingenia.*

Taught by former disasters, the dictator Fabius changed the system of the war.

We have lost Tarentum, said Hannibal, by the same art by which we took it.

The name of his disease⁴⁴ is avarice.

It is clear that the power of kindly-feeling is great, (that) of fear is feeble.

To Themistocles it seemed preferable⁴⁵ to be able to forget what he was unwilling to remember, than to remember what he had once heard or seen.

Many have doubted whether Sulla were more brave or lucky.

Bomilcar was put on his defence⁴⁶ rather according to right and justice⁴⁷ than the law of nations, (being) a follower of one who had come to Rome on the public faith.

Let him pay the penalty of his undutiful-conduct⁴⁸ towards our father, the death of my brother, and all my woes.

She first taught our ancestors how illustrious it was to rule foreign nations.

Democritus, having lost his eyes, could not distinguish black and white⁴⁹; but good and evil, justice and injustice, honour and dishonour he could distinguish.

At a fixed time, all the nations of the same blood come together to a wood hallowed by the auguries of their fathers and longstanding fear: and having slain a man in public, they celebrate their horrid rites.

Their whole life consists in hunting-expeditions, and in the studies of the art of war.

He preferred this should take place through the action of the Roman people⁵⁰; if there was no hope of that, he would try the Volsci, and the Æqui, and every extremity.

⁴⁴ Dative.

⁴⁵ *Optabilis*.

⁴⁶ *To be put on one's defence—*
reus fieri.

⁴⁷ *Ex aequo bonoque.*

⁴⁸ *Impietas.*

⁴⁹ Say, *Black (things) and white (things), good (things) bad (things) &c.*

⁵⁰ Say, *The Roman people being the author, abl. abs.*

When they judged they were ready for this⁵¹, they set fire to all their towns in number about twelve, their villages about forty, and the rest of their private buildings⁵²; they burnt up all their corn except what they were about to carry with them, in order that, all hope of return being taken away, they might be (the) more ready to undergo every danger.

There they placed the women, who implored those going forth to battle not to give them up into slavery to the Romans.

Five consecutive days Cæsar led his forces out of the camp, and had the line-of-battle drawn-up, that, if Ariovistus wished to engage with him, the power might not be wanting.

He wished rather to adorn Italy than his own house, although now that Italy is adorned⁵³, that very house seems to me adorned the more⁵⁴.

Varro, not having consulted his colleague, gave the signal for battle, and led his troops in order across the river, while Paullus followed, because he was better able not to approve than not to assist the design.

When they come to battle, it is a disgrace to the chief to be surpassed in valour, a disgrace for his following not to equal the valour of their chief.

This is an ancient opinion, judges, and it is confirmed from the most ancient literature and the monuments of the Greeks, "that the whole Island of Italy is consecrated to Ceres and Libera."

One proclaimed that the camp was already taken, another that the barbarians having destroyed the emperor and his army were come as conquerors.

They carry their wounds to their wives and mothers, nor do these fear to count or examine the blows.

They say Plato came into Italy that he might become acquainted-with the Pythagoreans.

They considered a space-of-two-years was enough for them to finish their walls.

⁵¹ *Ad hoc.*

⁵² Say, *Their remaining private buildings.*

⁵³ Say, *Italy having been adorned.*

⁵⁴ Say, *More adorned, ornamented.*

I speak of a learned and accomplished man to whom thought is life⁵⁵.

This, however, seemed a shame, that even the Roman camp should now be scared by undisciplined auxiliaries.

At length, when silence was obtained, he asked, "Where was Claudius Asellus, and since he disputed in words with him concerning valour, why did he not decide by the sword, and by-his-defeat⁵⁶ surrender the 'spolia opima,' or by-his-victory⁵⁷ take them himself?"

It is ridiculous to say nothing with-respect-to⁵⁸ those things we have, and to inquire-for those which we cannot have, to be silent about the recollection of men, to clamour-for the record of documents.

Such was the habit of their minds, that few ventured-on the crime, more wished it, and all permitted it.

They offered him money and favour, and whatever place of retirement he should choose.

These were men whom the memory of Nero inflamed, and regret for their former licence.

These philosophers consider those things alone good, which are honourable, and those alone bad, which are base: power, noble-birth, and other things external to the mind⁵⁹ they reckon neither among the good nor the bad.

It is an idle story that the Helusii and Osciani have⁶⁰ the features and countenances of men, the bodies and limbs of wild beasts.

Mithridates turned⁶⁰ all the rest of the time, not to forgetfulness of the old war, but to preparation for a new (one).

The book, which I have brought with me, is yours.

Those who are weary of life often fear to die.

I will not leave till you return home.

This man is a coward: he stayed at home the whole month while his fellow-citizens were fighting.

⁵⁵ Say, *To think is to live.*

⁵⁶ *By his defeat—by his victory,*
victus—victor.

⁵⁷ *Ad.*

⁵⁸ Say, *Without (extra) the mind.*

⁵⁹ *Gerere.*

⁶⁰ *Conferre.*

The charge was so ill-timed, that not a man escaped.

Death, naturally⁶¹ equal to all, is distinguished among posterity by oblivion or renown.

Many men in one state cannot lose their fortunes without⁶² drawing more persons into the calamity with them.

Mithridates in his flight⁶³ left in Pontus a very great quantity⁶⁴ of silver and gold, and all things most fair, both those which he had received from his ancestors, and those which he had himself carried-off from the whole of Asia in the former war⁶⁵, and brought together into his kingdom.

By that delay time⁶⁶ was given to the Vitellianists for retiring⁶⁷ into the vineyards obstructed by the interlacing of the twigs.

Ordered by Caius Cæsar to set-up his image in the temple, the Jews rather took-up arms.

Then not only the senate and equites, but also the common people, deplored that these two, of all men the basest in their shamelessness, their cowardice, and luxury, (should have been) chosen as-it-were by-fate⁶⁸ for the destruction of the empire.

One of the ambassadors, of well-known eloquence, but concealing his skill in speaking by an apt hesitation, and on that account the more powerful, pacified the minds of the soldiery.

The Gauls and Britons have the same audacity in challenging perils, and when (they) have come-upon them, the same cowardice in shirking⁶⁹ (them).

I, nominated prince by you, cannot call myself a private person, nor while another is reigning (can I call myself) a prince.

This man has waged more wars than others have read-of.

Italy is a witness of his glory, for that (great) conqueror Lucius Sulla himself has confessed it was freed by his valour.

Sicily is a witness, for, encircled on all sides by many

⁶¹ *Ex natura.*

⁶² Say, *So-that (at) they do not, &c.*

⁶³ Say, *Flying.*

⁶⁴ *Vis.*

⁶⁵ Say, *Which he had himself*

brought, &c., carried-off (part. agreeing with *which things*) *from, &c.*

⁶⁶ *Spatium.*

⁶⁷ Genitive gerund.

⁶⁸ *Fataliter.*

Detrectare.

dangers, he disentangled it, not by the terror of a war, but by the promptitude of his strategy ⁷⁰.

Gaul is a witness, for through it a way was opened by him for our legions into Spain.

What others call crimes this man calls cures, while with false names, severity instead of savagery, thrift instead of avarice, he terms your punishments and disgrace discipline.

In other circumstances, when the calamity comes, then the loss is sustained ⁷¹, but in finance, not only the incidence ⁷² of evil, but even the very fear of it brings calamity.

Having tried adversity, I find that not even prosperity has more danger.

I think that these four things ought to be present in a very great general, knowledge of military matters, valour, authority, and good-fortune.

Of what mind think you are they who pay us taxes, or those who farm ⁷³ and collect ⁷⁴ them, when two kings are close at hand with very great forces, when a single raid of cavalry can carry off in a short time the revenue of the whole year.

There was also another strong ⁷⁵ and serious opinion which had pervaded the minds of the barbarian nations, that our army had been brought into their coasts for the sake of plundering their most wealthy shrines.

When he reached Cuphites, the army, wearied with prolonged labour, besought him with tears to put an end to the war. They showed him their grey hairs, their wounds, their bodies wasted ⁷⁶ by age and toil, so that the monarch, touched with compassion, ordered a camp to be made with unusual magnificence, in order to alarm the enemy, and leave a monument of his greatness in the East.

There appeared to Ptolemy during the night, when he was adding walls and temples to Alexandria, a youth of singular

⁷⁰ *Consilium.*

⁷¹ *Accipere.*

⁷² *Adventus.*

⁷³ *Exercere.*

⁷⁴ *Exigere.*

⁷⁵ *Vehemens.*

⁷⁶ *Vacuus.*

grace, and beauty more than human, who admonished him to send the most trusty of his friends into Pontus, and fetch thence his effigy.

These ravagers of the world, after land has failed them, are searching the sea; if their enemy is wealthy, they are avaricious, if poor, ambitious. They only of all men covet wealth and poverty with equal avidity. To steal, to slaughter, to ravage, (this they call) empire, and when they make a solitude, they call it peace.

Many whose custom it is to estimate illustrious men by their following⁷⁷, having seen and gazed-on Agricola, called-in question⁷⁸ his renown.

To prepare for war, and at the same time to spare the treasury, to compel to service those whom you are unwilling to offend, to look-after every thing at home and abroad, and to do this among (men) envious (of you), opposing (you) and factious, is more difficult, Quirites, than is imagined⁷⁹.

They say I am boorish⁸⁰, and of uncultured manners, because I adorn the banquet with too little grace⁸¹, and do not esteem any buffoon or cook of more value than my steward, but it pleases me to confess this.

On the night which was next before the day appointed for the conference, the Moor is said to have turned over many things in his mind.

I did not despise your authority, my son, but I wished to try whether you knew that you were consul.

The frame of Catiline was enduring of hunger, of cold, and of waking; his mind was bold, crafty, versatile⁸²; of any thing he pleased a pretender and dissembler, (he was) covetous of another's property, prodigal of his own.

After he determined⁸³ to go to Tarentum, having chosen 10,000 foot and horse whom he thought most fit for the expe-

⁷⁷ *Ambitio.*

⁷⁸ *Quaerere.*

⁷⁹ *Say, Than opinion.*

⁸⁰ *Sordidus.*

⁸¹ *Parum scitè.*

⁸² *Varius.*

⁸³ *Say, It pleased (libet).*

dition for their swiftness and the lightness of their armour, in the fourth watch of the night he moved the standards.

When Carthage was destroyed, P. Africanus adorned the cities of the Sicilians with the fairest trophies and monuments, in order that he might place most tokens of victory among those, who, he considered, were especially delighted with the success of the Roman people.

All said "that men had been chosen by Punic treachery to seek-renewal-of" an old peace, which they themselves had forgotten." And Marcus Livius added, "that Caius Servilius the consul, who was near at hand, should be sent-for, that the peace might be treated-of in his presence."

Although, Scipio said, not only the truce, but also the law of nations had been broken, nevertheless he would do nothing against them unworthy either of the Roman people or of his own character.

Unbroken rest had given as much vigour to the one, as dangers and toil (had given) hardihood to the other.

In the meantime Galba in his ignorance⁸⁶, engrossed with the sacred-rites, was importuning⁸⁸ the gods of an empire now belonging-to-another, when a rumour was carried (to him), that some senator or other⁸⁷ was being carried-off⁸⁸ into the camp, (and) soon that it was Otho, who was being carried-off.

Nero will always be regretted by all the worst men; you and I must take⁸⁹ care that he be not regretted also by the good.

Horror comes over my mind as often as I remember that pearly entry, and this the only victory of Galba, when in the eyes of the city he ordered the prisoners to be decimated, whom on their entreaty⁹⁰ he had admitted to quarter⁹¹.

⁸⁴ *Repeters.*

⁸⁵ *Say, Ignorant.*

⁸⁶ *Fatigare.*

⁸⁷ *Some or other, incertus quis.*

⁸⁸ *Rapere.*

⁸⁹ *Say, It is to be provided by thee and me.*

⁹⁰ *Say, Whom entreating (deprecantes).*

⁹¹ *In fidem.*

It is a peculiarity of the human race to hate those whom you have injured.

If any one thinks that a smaller return⁹² of glory is received from Greek verses than from Latin, he greatly errs; because, Greek⁹³ is read in almost every nation, Latin⁹⁴ is confined in its own somewhat⁹⁵ narrow limits.

Of Titus Vinius it is doubted whether instant fear took-away⁹⁶ his voice, or whether he shouted-out that it was not the command of Otho that he should be slain.

Some persons, acquainted with the design⁹⁷ of the emperor, came to ask Agricola whether he would go into his province.

Such cheapness of provisions followed suddenly after the greatest want and dearness of bread-stuff, through the expectation and fame of one man, as a prolonged peace would scarcely have been able to bring-about after the greatest productiveness of the land.

Take care lest, as it has been most honourable for your ancestors to hand down to you the glory of so great a power, so it be most disgraceful for you not to be able to protect and keep that which you have received.

It is difficult to say in what odium we are with⁹⁸ foreign nations, on account of the wrongs and vices of those whom we have sent to them during these years.

The vanquished must die⁹⁹, those-who-surrender¹⁰⁰ must die. This alone is-of-importance, whether we pour out our latest breath with¹⁰⁰ mockery and insults, or with valour.

When disaster¹⁰¹ was followed¹⁰² by disaster, and every year was marked by deaths and defeats, Agricola was called-upon¹⁰³ by the voice of the people as a leader, all men comparing his vigour, firmness, and mind skilled in war, with the inability and cowardice of the rest.

⁹² *Fructus.*

⁹³ Neuter plural.

⁹⁴ *Sand.*

⁹⁵ *Consumere.*

⁹⁶ Say, *Skilled in the thoughts*
(*vojitationes*).

⁹⁷ *Apud.*

⁹⁸ *Gerundiva.*

⁹⁹ *Dediti.*

¹⁰⁰ *Per.*

¹⁰¹ *Damna, pl.*

¹⁰² *Continuare.*

¹⁰³ *Poscere.*

Agricola was born June 13th, in the third consulship of Caius Caesar; he died in his fifty-seventh year, August 28rd, in the consulship of Collega and Priscus.

Happy were you, Agricola, not only in the splendour of your life, but also in the seasonableness of your death. But for me and for your daughter, besides our sorrow for a parent¹⁰⁴ snatched-away, it augments our grief that¹⁰⁵ it did not fall to us to sit by your bedside¹⁰⁶, to nurse you as-you-failed¹⁰⁷, to take-our-fill¹⁰⁸ of your look and embrace.

This is our sorrow, this our wound; you were lost to us four years before, under the circumstances¹⁰⁹ of so long an absence.

All things without doubt, O best of parents, were-there-in-abundance¹¹⁰ for your honour, while your most loving wife sat-by (you), but you were laid-to-rest¹¹¹ with the fewer tears, and with their latest light your eyes regretted something (still absent).

If there is any place for the shades of the good, if, as it pleases the wise (to suppose), great souls are not extinguished with their bodies, may you rest in peace, and call us your family from weak regret and womanish lamentations to the contemplation of your virtues, which it is neither right to mourn nor bewail¹¹². May we rather grace you by our admiration than by short-lived¹¹³ praises, and if nature permits¹¹⁴, by our emulation. This is true honour, this the filial duty¹¹⁵ of every one most-nearly-related¹¹⁶ to you.

This also would I charge your daughter and wife, so to revere the memory of their father, so (to revere the memory) of their husband, that they recall¹¹⁷ with themselves all his deeds and sayings, and cherish¹¹⁸ rather his reputation and the image of his mind, than of his body.

¹⁰⁴ Objective genitive.

¹⁰⁵ *Quod*, followed by indicative.

¹⁰⁶ *Assidere valetudini*.

¹⁰⁷ Say, *Failing*.

¹⁰⁸ *Satiari*.

¹⁰⁹ *Conditions*.

¹¹⁰ *Superesse*.

¹¹¹ *Componere*.

¹¹² Say, (*That*) which should be mourned, &c. (acc. & inf.): *mourn, bewail, lugere, plangere*.

¹¹³ *Temporalis*.

¹¹⁴ *Suppeditare*.

¹¹⁵ *Pietas*.

¹¹⁶ *Conjunctissimus*.

¹¹⁷ *Revolvere*. ¹¹⁸ *Amplecti*.

PART III.

CASE CONSTRUCTIONS AND IDIOMS.

CHAPTER I.

THE ABLATIVE CASE.

THE questions *how, where, when*, which are often answered by adverbs, may also be answered by the prepositions *in, with, from, by, through, &c.*, with a noun.

Thus we may either say,

Write *very carefully*,

or, Write *with great care* ;

in the first example, using the adverb *very carefully* ; and in the second, a preposition and its case, *with great care*.

So we may either say,

Stand *here*,

or, Stand *in this place*.

In such cases as the above, the ablative is used in Latin, generally without a preposition.

This ablative will indicate either the cause, instrument, manner, price, dimension, material, condition, time, or place* ; and, like an adverb, may qualify either verbs or adjectives.

* The ablatives of time and place, which answer the questions *when, where*, will be considered separately.

The following sentences will exemplify these constructions:

- (i.) The bad hate to sin *for fear of punishment*.
- (ii.) He ravaged the country *with fire and sword*.
- (iii.) One man re-established our fortune *by delaying*.
- (iv.) *With a great sum* obtained I this freedom.
- (v.) My brother was born *three years* before me.
- (vi.) Swallows build nests *of clay*.
- (vii.) I will return home *on this condition*.

In (i.) the words *for fear of punishment* indicate the cause of the hating.

In (ii.) the words *with fire and sword* indicate the instrument, or perhaps the manner, of the ravaging.

In (iii.) the words *by delaying* indicate the manner of the re-establishing.

In (iv.) the words *with a great sum* indicate the manner, or perhaps the price, of the obtaining.

In (v.) the words *three years* indicate the *length of time* by which my brother is older than me. This use of the ablative will be treated of under the head of dimensions.

In (vi.) the words *of clay* denote the material with which the building is done.

In (vii.) the words *on this condition* indicate the condition of my returning.

These sentences become in Latin :

- (i.) Oderunt peccare mali *formidine poenae*.
- (ii.) Agros vastavit *igne et ferro*.
- (iii.) Unus homo nobis *cunctando* restituit rem.
- (iv.) *Magnâ* ego *pecuniâ* hanc libertatem consecutus sum.
- (v.) Frater meus ante me natus est *tribus annis*.
- (vi.) Hirundines *limo* nidos aedificant.
- (vii.) *Hâc conditione* domum redibo.

Three points require especial notice.

1. If the ablative denote a living creature, it will require the preposition *a* or *ab* before it in Latin : e. g.

He was slain *by a lion*.

A leone interfectus est.

But,

He was slain *by a javelin*.

Jaculo interfectus est.

The former is called an ablative of the agent (i. e. of the doer) : the latter is clearly an ablative of the instrument.

2. The cause is more usually translated by a preposition, such as *per* (*through*), *ob* or *propter* (*on account of*), than by an ablative case alone. Thus,

He abdicated the supreme power for love of ease, might be translated by,

<i>Per</i>	}	<i>amorem otii</i> abdicavit se imperio,
<i>Ob</i>		
<i>Propter</i>		

as well as by,

Amore otii abdicavit se imperio.

3. The ablative of the manner almost always has an adjective with it, except, perhaps, in some common phrases such as *vi* (*by force*), *fraude* (*by fraud*), *jure* (*by right*), &c.

This ablative may also be accompanied by the preposition *cum* (*with*). Thus,

He drove out the foe with great slaughter, may be translated,

Magnâ cum strage hostem expulit.

Examples on the Ablative of Cause, Manner, &c.

Germany abounds in streams and rivers.

The mind is endued with perpetual motion.

Ireland is less by a half than Britain.

Let us cultivate friendship by kindness.

In-this-way alone will you escape punishment.

No one can see himself, but by a mirror.

Happiness cannot be bought with money.

After the labour of the banquet, they refreshed themselves with sleep.

They saved themselves by a timely flight.

He is a foot taller than his grandfather.

That victory was gained by much bloodshed.

He was pursued by a mad dog, and died of the fright.

These things you have done neither through fear, nor affection, but from a love of servitude.

Metals are known by their sound.

Birds reveal their nature by their song.

Germany heard the sound of war in all her sky.

Often the fruit of a whole year is lost by a single rumour of danger, or fear of war.

That speech is now out of date¹, refuted much more by circumstances than by words.

He alone was feared by the enemy, (and) besides (him) no one (else).

Labour and pleasure are joined together² by a sort-of companionship³.

The Suevi for the most part⁴ live on milk and flesh.

Coins are not reckoned by number, but by weight.

We measure great men by their virtue, not by their fortune.

Vicious princes are-harmful more by their example, than by their crimes.

In my opinion Menippus was at that time the most eloquent man in the whole (of) Asia.

Virgilius Romanus was remarkable for the uprightness of his character⁵, for the elegance of his genius, and for the variety of his works.

The following winter was consumed in the most salutary measures.

Deserted by all his friends, he died an exile.

The trees they cut down, and filled the wells with stones.

These are men not in reality, but in name.

¹ To be out of date, *Obsolevisse*.

⁴ Latin, *Maximam partem*.

² *Inter se*.

⁵ *Mores*.

³ Say, *By a certain (quidam) companionship*.

She was killed by her father, and buried by her husband.

Galba was driven hither and thither⁶ by the varying pressure⁷ of the fluctuating crowd.

Many authors have related the events of that time with equal eloquence and freedom.

Nero squandered fifteen million six hundred and twenty-five thousand sesterces in gifts.

All things thence-forward were done by command of the soldiers.

Piso fulfilled the thirty-first year of his age with better reputation than fortune.

He was more fortunate in another's⁸ reign, than in his own.

Thetis will woo thee with all her waves.

Cities, once famous, have been burnt by fire from heaven.

Agricola was carried headlong to fame at-once⁹ by his own virtues and⁹ by the vices of others.

He did not, however, challenge renown and death by an empty boast of freedom.

The haughty spirit of Catiline was troubled continually¹⁰ by his want of private means¹¹, and the consciousness of his crimes.

Every one measures dangers by his own fear

Through his unparalleled¹² liberality in private, and his very great donations in public, Cæsar owed a large sum of money.

The help of the gods is not gained by vows and womanish lamentations.

Jugurtha was both valiant in battle, and wise in council.

He proclaimed it on the public faith.

I think the conspiracy of Catiline memorable from the novelty of the crime and of the dangers.

The drop hollows the stone, not by force, but by often falling.

⁶ Latin, *Huc illuc*.

⁷ *Impulsus*.

⁸ *Alienus*, agreeing with *reign*.

⁹ *Simul*, . . . *simul*.

¹⁰ *Indies*.

¹¹ *Private means, res familiares*

¹² *Egregius*.

The state, oppressed by slavery, paid the penalty of its foolish delight.

By your valour you have made the Romans the most friendly of our friends to us.

We can effect this either by favour or largess.

The nation was oppressed by military-service and poverty.

Driven by necessity, he determined to contend in arms.

The body remarkable for its eyes, its hair, and ferocity of mien, was brought to Rome.

In a state hovering¹³ between licence and liberty, even little matters are carried on in great excitement¹⁴.

Between Cremona and Verona is situated a village, now noted for two Roman disasters.

The Temple at Jerusalem was fortified in the manner of a citadel.

Cerialis also drew up his fleet, unequal in number, more powerful in the skill of its pilots and the size of the vessels.

In that court the one road to power was to glut the insatiable appetite of the emperor by prodigal banquets, extravagance¹⁵, and debauchery.

He is said to have delayed his brother's good-fortune through envy.

Some of the soldiers slew themselves at the funeral-pyre, not through fear, but in emulation of his glory, and affection for-their-prince¹⁶.

My father was noted for the study of eloquence and philosophy, and by these virtues he deserved the anger of Caius Caesar.

He spent the year of his tribuneship in rest and ease.

The mountaineers were cut-to-pieces, and scattered, at the first charge.

Enraged at this contest, the soldiery turned their arms against the town of Athens.

¹³ *Incertus*.

¹⁴ *Motus*, plur.

¹⁵ *Sumptus*.

¹⁶ Genitive (objective). Cf. ch. xii.

In Hyrcania the people keep¹⁷ dogs at the public cost, to destroy their dead.

By silence and endurance, finally by prayers and tears, they sought-for pardon.

They carried Valens surrounded by the eagles and standards to the tribunal.

The body was burnt by his friends with the usual honour.

The first day was spent in an assault, rather than in the tactics¹⁸ of a veteran army.

Cnæus Pompeius entered the Temple at Jerusalem by the right of conquest.

Examples on the Ablative.

(More Difficult.)

In my opinion, said Cicero, Curio was the most eloquent man in those times.

The maidens whose brothers had been slain by the Horatii were weeping.

He has dared to say that I surrounded my head with ivy.

The ships which we have taken are full of slaves.

Let us surround our brows with garlands, and so go to the banquet.

The book which he was reading, about old age, was written by a celebrated orator, Cicero.

I will buy wine, meat, and bread, that we may not all die of hunger.

Broken-down with toil and grief, he retired to Baiæ, and there died.

He alone can be called happy, who is content with his lot.

This book which I hold in my hand is yours, my son.

He replied that the soldiers were selected by him, not bought.

¹⁷ *Alere.*

¹⁸ *Artes.*

Piso, now terrified by the murmur of the increasing¹⁹ tumult, and the voices resounding into the city, had followed Galba into the forum.

Sempronius Densus, a centurion of the prætorian cohort, running-to-meet²⁰ the armed (crowd) with a drawn dagger, upbraided their crime, and now with his hand, now with his voice, by turning the murderers on himself, gave Piso, though wounded, a means-of-escape.

Vitellius was consuming the fortune of the empire in idle luxury and profuse banquets, drunken in the middle of the day, and obese with gluttony.

Military efficiency²¹ is kept up, my comrades, by obeying, rather than by inquiring-into²² the designs of your leader.

His mind was overwhelmed with fear lest he should render the victor less placable to his wife and children by an obstinate contest.

The bad, through hatred of their own condition²³, wish that every thing should be changed.

I will show you a plan, if ye wish to be men, by which ye may escape such great evils as these²⁴.

He was ordered to proclaim it on the public faith.

When Sulla, in our recollection, ordered Damasippus and others of-that-sort, who had fattened²⁵ on the misfortune of the state, to be strangled, who did not praise his act?

Men complain unjustly of their nature, that it is weak and of short life, and is ordered rather by chance than by virtue.

The town of Zama, situated in the plain, is fortified rather by art than nature.

When Metellus saw the town fortified by labour and by its position, he surrounded the walls with a rampart and ditch.

More were slain in that battle than in all previous²⁶ (ones), for their flight was hindered by sleepiness and unwonted fear.

¹⁹ *Crebescens.*

²⁰ *Occurrere*, (governing dative).

²¹ *Res militares.*

²² *Sciscitare*, (to try to know).

²³ *Res*, pl.

²⁴ *Say*, *These so great evils.*

²⁵ *Crescere.*

²⁶ *Superior.*

The witness was asked whether he had been beaten by the accused.

Many prodigies, which in barbarous ages are observed even in peace, are now only heard-of in a universal panic.

Scarcely had the day risen²⁷, (when) the walls were full of combatants, and the plains shining with men and arms.

The German cohorts advanced with a fierce chant, brandishing their shields above their shoulders, with bodies exposed in their national fashion.

The enemy with more measured and surer aim²⁸ hurl-down their javelins from-above.

The legionaries, protected by mantlets and hurdles, undermine the wall and erect a mound.

The prætorians roll down with a tremendous crash millstones disposed for that very purpose²⁹.

At length Cæcina, in shame at the attack³⁰ so rashly begun, crossed the Padus, and determined to seek Cremona.

When Mithridates had recovered his kingdom, a thing which³¹ happened to him beyond his hope, he was not content with it.

Those who survived the battle were concealed by the swamps, and perished there through the severity of the winter, and their wounds.

Their altars are honoured³² by prayers and pure fire; and they do not get-wet though in the open (air).

To narrate fabulous (stories), and to cloud³³ the mind of one's readers with fictions, I would believe far from the dignity of the work undertaken.

It was discussed³⁴ in secret whether Piso also should set-out.

The two consuls of that year perished, the one by disease, the other by the sword³⁵.

²⁷ Say, *The day having scarcely risen*, (abl. abs.).

²⁸ *A more measured and surer aim, libratus magis et certus ictus.*

²⁹ *For that very purpose, ad id ipsum.*

³⁰ Genitive.

³¹ *A thing which, id quod.*

³² *Adolere.*

³³ *Obtectare.*

³⁴ *Agitare.*

³⁵ *Ferum.*

Happy art thou, Chremes, to have a son endued with such a disposition.

Asia is so fruitful and fertile that it easily surpasses all lands in the variety of its fruits, the productiveness of its fields, the size of its pastures, and in the multitude of those things which are exported.

For-a-long-time there was a great dispute whether military efficiency was advanced²⁶ by force of body or by fortitude of mind.

Empire is easily retained by the arts of which it is born²⁷ in the beginning.

It was not my design to wear-away my leisure in carelessness and sloth, to pass my life in cultivating my land or hunting.

Cæsar was considered great for his benefactions and munificence, Cato for the integrity of his life. The former became renowned for his gentleness and sympathy, sternness added to the worth of the latter²⁸. Cæsar acquired fame by giving, relieving, and pardoning, Cato by giving no largess²⁹. In the one there was refuge for the wretched, in the other destruction for the bad. The affability of the former was praised, of the latter (it was) the firmness.

CHAPTER II.

PLACE.

THE question *where* may be answered by an ablative case indicating the place: e. g.

My father died *in that house*.

Here the words *in that house* indicate the place where my father died.

²⁶ Say, *Advanced*, (active).

²⁷ *Partus*.

²⁸ Say, *Added worth to the latter*.

²⁹ *To give no largess—Nihil largiri*.

The Latin will be,

Pater mihi *ex* domo mortuus est.

It is more usual, however, to employ a preposition. Thus,

He lived three years *in* Britain,

would be translated,

Tres annos egit *in* Britannia.

When the question *where* is answered by the name of a town, the preposition is usually omitted, and the town put in the ablative. Thus,

at Philippi becomes *Philippis*.

at Carthage „ *Carthaginē*.

But if the town is first declension singular, a case ending in *ae* is used ; and if it be second declension singular, a case ending in *i* is used. Thus,

at Rome becomes *Romae*.

at Miletus „ *Mileti*.

This apparent anomaly springs from the former existence of a special case to indicate position ; this is sometimes referred to as the locative case.

Although it will be found useful to practise the rules given above, yet it must be observed that a preposition is often used even with the name of a town. Thus, *apud Athenas* is quite as correct as *Athenis* ; though this perhaps means rather *in the neighbourhood of Athens*.

While dealing with towns, it may be remarked that the preposition which might be expected to govern them is very often omitted. Thus,

Cæsar returned *to* Rome,

may be translated,

Cæsar rediit *Romam*.

And this is to be preferred to,

Cæsar rediit *ad* Romam.

So also,

Demaratus fled *from* Corinth,

may be translated,

Demaratus fugit *Corintho*.

There are certain words in common use, such as *domus* (*home*), and *rus* (*the country*), which follow the same rule as towns.

It will be well to commit the following list to memory.

<i>Home</i> (i. e. to home) . . .	<i>domum.</i>
<i>Into</i> } <i>the country</i> . . .	<i>rus.</i>
<i>To</i> }	
<i>From home</i>	<i>domo.</i>
<i>At home</i>	<i>domi.</i>
<i>In the country</i>	<i>ruri.</i>
<i>On service</i> (i. e. military service)	<i>militiae.</i>
<i>At the war</i>	<i>belli.</i>
<i>On the ground</i>	<i>humi.</i>

Examples on Place, and Names of Towns.

There was a terrible sight in the open plains.

Marius left Rome and fled to Africa.

I see an old man returning from the country.

Cadmus scattered teeth on the ground, seeds of mortals¹.

They allow no images in their towns, much-less in their temples.

Venturing² nothing farther, he returned safe home.

One died at Rome, the other at Cumæ.

I write home as often as I can³.

Some are at Rome, some at Athens, others at Carthage ; we will go to Corinth.

These pursuits were cultivated in Italy, and here at Rome they were not neglected.

Hannibal, expelled from Carthage, came an exile to Ephesus to king Antiochus.

Solon came from Athens to Miletus to hear Thales.

At home and on service the Romans always practised virtue.

There is poverty at home, debt abroad.

¹ Say, *Mortal seeds.*

² *Ausus.*

³ *As often as possible, quam saepissimè.*

Cato hurried home from the senate.

Wait-for me at Naples.

Horace studied philosophy at Athens.

Examples on Place and Names of Towns.

(*More Difficult.*)

When many men had lost much property in Asia, we know that at Rome payment was stopped⁴, (and) credit fell-to-the-ground⁵.

Then Jugurtha, contrary to royal etiquette⁶, in as pitiful a plight⁷ as possible⁸ came to Rome with Cassius.

Stay with my wife at Puteoli, I go to salute Cæsar at Rome.

We say that you set out from Rome before the time.

Very few remained in Italy when Cæsar had set out for Philippi.

On a certain day the people-of-Vacca⁹ invited the centurions and military tribunes to their houses, and slew them all at the banquet.

All whom disgrace or crime had driven-away from home came-in-a-stream¹⁰ to Rome, as into a sink.

I did not think there were booksellers at Lyons.

Metellus was informed at Cirta by letters from Rome that the province (of) Numidia had been given to Marius.

Having finished my business in that place, I returned to Corinth.

Jugurtha learnt at Zama that Marius had been sent out of the line-of-march to Sicca with a few cohorts, to get corn¹¹.

In Athens at that time the state was administered¹² at home and at war by the judgment of the few.

Two brothers were sent from Carthage, whose¹³ name was Philænus¹².

⁴ Say, *Payment (solutio) having been stopped (impedire), &c.*

⁵ *Concidere.*

⁶ *Decus.*

⁷ *Cullus.*

⁸ *As pitiful as possible, quam miserrimus.*

⁹ *Vaccenses.*

¹¹ *Frumentatum, supine.*

¹² *Tractare.*

¹⁰ *Confluere.*

¹³ *Dative.*

Hannibal, the Carthaginian general, defeated Publius Scipio at the river Ticinus, Sempronius at Trebia, and Flaminius at the Lake Trasymenus.

The Moors, having obtained every thing, set out, three of them for Rome with Rufus; the other two returned to the king.

The authority of the senate has been given-up to a very bitter foe; your sovereignty has been betrayed; the state has been corrupted at home and abroad.

CHAPTER III.

TIME.

THE question *when* may be answered by an ablative case indicating the time of an occurrence: e. g.

In that year Carthage was blotted out.

Latin,

Eo anno deleta est Carthago.

Here the question *when* (indicating the time) is answered by the ablative *eo anno*, *in that year*.

*Examples on Time *.*

In the month of April¹ all things grow-green.

At that time I was not born.

On the very day of his departure an eagle flew-before (him) with gentle motion², (as) a guide of the road.

On the next day doors were shut as in a captured city.

In the beginning of the summer Agricola lost his little son, born the year before.

* Examples on "duration of time" will be found in the chapter treating of dimensions (Pt. II. ch. vi.).

¹ In Latin the names of the

months are adjectives: thus, a Roman would not say *the month of April* but *the Aprilian month*.

² *Meatus*.

The farmer cannot work in the winter.

Birds seek their nests at sunset.

Behold! in the morning they were all corpses.

In a short time I will explain every thing.

The nightingale is not heard by day.

In the middle of the night³ Catiline set out with a few companions for the camp of Manlius⁴.

The king attacked the town as on the day before⁵.

Marius triumphed with great glory on the first of January.

At that time he was the hope of the Roman people.

All the Carthaginian ships were in a short time taken or sunk.

In the midst of the night were seen torches, and a glow in the sky⁶.

In a short time the report of so great a crime was noised-abroad through all Africa.

On the next day Metellus set out for Rome.

Cnæus Pompeius prepared (his work) at the end of winter⁷, took-it-in-hand⁸ at the beginning of spring⁹, and finished it in the middle of the summer⁷.

At the beginning of night⁹ close your house.

No mortal¹⁰ is wise at all hours.

A man can become illustrious both in peace and war.

At that time Catiline had great hopes¹¹ of standing for the consulship¹².

The king fled from the town by night with his children and a great portion of his wealth.

³ Say, *In the middle night.*

⁴ Say, *Into the Manlian camp.*

⁵ *Superior.*

⁶ Say, *Of the sky.*

⁷ Say, *In the extreme winter—in the entering spring—in the middle summer.*

⁸ *Suscipere.*

⁹ Say, *In the first night.*

¹⁰ Say, *No one of mortals.*

¹¹ *Singular.*

¹² *I stand for the consulship, consulatum peto.*

*Examples on Time.**(More Difficult.)*

One hour in the morning is worth more than two in the evening.

I do not myself think he will return in the spring.

We will sleep at home to-night, and return to Baiæ in the morning.

He and I were born in the same year, in the consulship of Manlius¹³.

On the fifteenth of January, the soothsayer announced to Galba as-he-was-sacrificing before the temple of Apollo, entreats of ill-omen, threatening plots, and a foe in-his-family¹⁴.

The holidays will begin December 17, and end January 23.

He says that he himself went round the camp at night to inspect the sentinels every hour.

The famine is so severe, that no one has eaten for three days.

He died the tenth year after the foundation of the city¹⁵.

In the morning he is confined to his bed¹⁶, at the second hour he calls for his sandals, he walks three miles, and exercises not less his mind than his body.

In a short time Catiline had filled-up his legions, though at the beginning he had not had more than two thousand.

In a severe winter he reached Suthul, where the king's treasures were, by forced marches.

At the dead of night¹⁷ Jugurtha suddenly¹⁸ surrounded the camp of Aulus with a crowd of his Numidians.

At the time when¹⁹ the Carthaginians ruled most-of Africa, the Cyrenians also were great and opulent.

Our family initiated²⁰ its friendship with the Roman people in the Carthaginian war, at which time honour, rather than profit, was to-be-sought.

He promised to open the gate of the city, at whatever time of the night he gave the signal.

¹³ Say, *Manlius being consul.*

¹⁴ *Domesticus.*

¹⁵ Say, *From the city founded.*

¹⁶ Say, *By his bed.*

¹⁷ *Intempestâ nocte.*

¹⁸ *De improviso.*

¹⁹ Say, *At which time.*

²⁰ *Instituere.*

CHAPTER IV.

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF RESPECT.

AFTER a general statement, such as *he was wounded*, the part affected is sometimes particularly defined : e. g.

He was wounded *in the hand*.

Here the words *in the hand* define the part affected by the wound.

In Latin the noun defining the part affected may be put either in the accusative, or the ablative.

Thus the above sentence would become—

Vulneratus est $\begin{cases} \textit{manum.} \\ \textit{manu.} \end{cases}$

This construction is called the accusative or ablative of respect.

Examples on the Accusative and Ablative of Respect.

Agesilaus was lame in either foot.

He trembles in his knees.

You are my senior in age.

I am not more ill in body, than in mind.

The women of the Germans are barefooted and barearmed.

I was wounded in that battle in my hand.

With bare head and feet¹ they rushed forth from the temple.

Barefooted came the beggar maid before the king.

Germany heard the sound of arms in all her sky.

Achilles was wounded by an arrow in the right heel.

You are prior in age and wisdom, speak first.

A certain man diseased in his hand, at the instance of a priest² prayed that he might be trodden on by the foot of a woman.

¹ Say, *thrust their head and feet*,
(*head and feet*, acc. of respect).

² Say, *A priest being the author*.

King Bocchus ruled all the Moors, in other * (respects) except his name, unknown to the Roman people.

He influenced the young by his authority, the old by his entreaties; calm in countenance, fearless in his speech, he checked the unseasonable tears of his (attendants).

CHAPTER V.

ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE OF QUALITY WITH AN EPITHET.

LET us consider the sentences—

(i.) He was a man $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{of} \\ \textit{with} \end{array} \right\}$ a mild disposition.

(ii.) Mars was represented as a god $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{of} \\ \textit{with} \end{array} \right\}$ a terrible countenance.

In these examples the nouns *man*, *god*, are severally qualified or described by the words which immediately follow them.

Just as in English we may either say *of* a mild disposition, or *with* a mild disposition, so in Latin we may use either the genitive, or ablative, in such a place as this.

This construction is called the genitive, or ablative, of quality with an epithet *.

It will be observed that the epithet is necessary to complete the sense. Thus, we cannot say,

He was a man *of a disposition*.

But we can say,

He was a man *of a mild disposition*.

Mild is of course the epithet.

These sentences become in Latin,

(i.) Homo erat $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{mitis ingenii} \\ \textit{miti ingenio} \end{array} \right\}$

(ii.) Fingebatur Mars $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{terribilis aspectus} \\ \textit{terribili aspectu} \end{array} \right\}$ deus.

* *Cetera*, acc.

* An epithet is an adjective denoting quality.

If the noun is described as being of some undefined *value*, the genitive construction is used, as in English, and the substantive *value* (*pretii*) is omitted altogether: e. g.

Of little worth are arms abroad, unless there is counsel at home.
Latin,

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.

Here *parvi* means *of little worth*, and agrees with *pretii* which has been omitted.

Examples on Quality with Epithet.

They had seen a boar of vast bulk.

In Jerusalem stood a temple of vast wealth.

The number of the besieged of every age was six hundred thousand.

The image of the goddess was not of human aspect.

Cerberus is represented as a dog with three heads.

We made a journey of seventy miles in two days.

Agesilaus was of low stature and slight frame.

The Jordan flows into a lake of great circuit, with the appearance of the sea.

The consul was a man of singular weight and virtue.

A brave man counts death of little (moment).

A snake of marvellous size harassed the Roman army at the river Brag.

He dug a ditch of sixty feet (wide).

Be of good courage¹, I am of great readiness² in³ speaking.

Tarquin had a brother, a young man of mild disposition.

Africa is said to produce serpents of twenty cubits.

Of what⁴ innocency ought emperors to be, of what moderation in all matters, of what honour, of what graciousness, of what a disposition, of what humanity?

¹ *Animus.*

² *Alacritas.*

³ *Ad.*

⁴ *Quantus.*

*Examples on Quality.**(More Difficult.)*

Which of us was of so boorish⁵ and rude a mind as not to be disturbed⁶ lately by the death of Roscius?

Titus was a man of such good-nature⁷ and liberality that he could deny no one any thing.

Here is a man of the greatest authority and respect-for-an-oath⁸; Lucius Lucullus, and he⁹ says, not that he thinks, but that he knows, not that he has heard, but that he has seen.

Piso in face and figure of the ancient type¹⁰, and in a fair estimation stern, was by those interpreting more unfavourably¹¹ considered somewhat gloomy¹².

The Romans, roused by wounds, seize their weapons, and rush along the roads, some few in their military equipment, most of them with their garments twisted round their arms, and swords drawn.

It is of little moment¹³ that you recover your taxes by a victory, (after) having lost the tax-collectors.

Lucius Catiline, born of noble family, was a man with great force of mind and body, but with a wicked and depraved disposition.

Sempronia was a woman who had committed many acts of manly daring.

My peril declares of what account he had made the words of your ambassadors.

They see him (when) present of such moderation, of such gentleness and humanity, that those seem to be most happy among whom he tarries longest.

Who are these who have taken-possession-of¹⁴ the state?

⁵ *Agrestis.*

⁶ Say, *Who was not, &c.* See Pt. III. ch. xix.

⁷ *Facilitas.*

⁸ *Religio.*

⁹ *And he, qui.*

¹⁰ *Mos.*

¹¹ *Deterius.*

¹² *Somewhat gloomy* may be expressed by the comparative.

¹³ *It is of little moment, parvi refert.*

¹⁴ *Occupare.*

the most abandoned men, with bloody hands (and) incredible avarice, most dangerous¹⁵, and at the same time most arrogant.

I esteem the word-of-honour of Cassius of not less value than that of the state¹⁶.

Numidia fell¹⁷ to Metellus, a stern man, a man, however, with an unsullied reputation.

In this way the two chiefs were contending together¹⁸, themselves (well) matched¹⁹, but with unequal advantages²⁰.

The commonweal is of more value to me than consulship or prætorship.

Consider whether acts or words are of more account.

CHAPTER VI.

DIMENSIONS OF TIME AND LENGTH.

LET us consider the following sentences—

(i.) Troy was besieged by the Greeks *ten years*.

(ii.) The soldiers drew out a rampart *eighty feet* high.

It will be observed that the dimensions *ten years, eighty feet*, have the sign of no case before them.

In Latin such dimensions, whether of time or length, are put in the accusative.

Thus, the above sentences become,

(i.) *Decem annos Troja a Græcis oppugnabatur.*

(ii.) *Milites aggerem altum pedes octoginta extruxerunt.*

It will be seen that the dimensions *eighty feet* qualify the adjective *high* like an adverb, and may in fact be treated as an ablative of manner. Thus (ii.) may be written—

Milites aggerem altum pedibus octoginta extruxerunt.

This is very rarely the case with dimensions of time.

After a comparison, however, either by means of an adjective,

¹⁵ *Noentissimi.*

¹⁶ Say, *Than the public word of honour (fides).*

¹⁷ *Evenire.*

¹⁸ Say, *Between themselves.*

¹⁹ *Par.*

²⁰ *Opes.*

or of an adverb, the ablative is to be preferred, whether the dimensions represent time or length: e. g.

(i.) This staff is $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a foot longer} \\ \text{longer by a foot} \end{array} \right\}$ than yours.

(ii.) He lived $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{three years longer} \\ \text{longer by three years} \end{array} \right\}$ at Rome than at Athens.

Latin,

(i.) *Hic baculus longior est pede quam tuus.*

(ii.) *Romæ diutius quam Athenis vixit tribus annis.*

Examples on Dimensions of Time and Length.

The enemy fight with spears six feet long.

He died three years old¹.

The city, difficult-of-access² by its situation, was strengthened by a wall fifty feet high.

They have been playing several hours, and are playing still.

He has been absent now three days.

I was distant from Rome three days' journey.

The whole army rested a few days.

You cannot stir him a finger's breadth³.

We have heard these reports now three years.

Five consecutive days Cæsar drew up his forces before the camp.

The river Nile overflows its banks the whole summer.

The Romans were two thousand fewer than the Sabines.

The temple of Æsculapius is five thousand paces distant from Epidaurus.

The snow stood ten feet deep on the tops of the hills⁴.

Ariovistus halted three miles from Cæsar's camp.

Marius lived all his boyhood at Arpinum.

They marched in company⁵ that day and the next without fear.

¹ *Natus.*

² *Ardus.*

⁴ Say, *On the highest hills.*

³ *A finger's breadth, transversum digitum.*

⁵ *Conjuncti.*

You have been sleeping seven hours.

A man is an inch taller in the morning than in the evening.

The city was besieged ten consecutive summers and winters.

Regulus sent to Rome horns of a beast a hundred and twenty feet long.

Day and night ⁶ the fates attend us.

Ariovistus halted six thousand paces from Cæsar's camp.

Examples on Dimensions of Time and Length.

(More Difficult.)

Agamemnon, together-with the whole of Greece, is said to have besieged one city ten years.

It has been written by Posidonius, that Panætius lived thirty years after he had published his books "On Duties".

Having entered the shrine, Vespasian saw behind his back one of the Egyptian nobles named Basilides, whom he knew to be detained several days' journey from Alexandria.

He asked the priests whether Basilides had entered the shrine; finally, having despatched some horsemen, he discovered that he was eighty miles off at that time.

CHAPTER VII.

VERBS GOVERNING AN ABLATIVE.

THERE are certain verbs, such as *fungor* (*I perform*), *fruor* (*I enjoy*), *utor* (*I use*), *vescor* (*I eat*), *potior* (*I get possession of*), which govern their direct object, not in the accusative case, but in the ablative case.

Potior governs either an ablative or a genitive.

⁶ i.e. *During the whole day and night.*

⁷ Say, *Concerning (de) Duties.*

Examples of Verbs governing an Ablative.

Those states are most happy, which enjoy liberty.

We will use our money, and enjoy life.

The Trojans gained-possession-of the wished-for sand.

I will make-use-of your kindness, since you listen-to¹ me so attentively in this new kind of speaking.

He prepared to use treachery instead of arms.

The Numidians generally feed-on milk and game², and do not require salt or other incitements to gluttony.

I will perform the part³ either of a general or a soldier.

Do we not already enjoy liberty of speech?

They use your allies as enemies, your enemies as allies.

The sick cannot enjoy life.

Metellus set-out for Thala in the hope of finishing the war, if he could-gain-possession-of that town.

Night, and the booty of the camp, delayed the enemy, so that they did not use⁴ their victory.

CHAPTER VIII.

"OPUS" AND "USUS."

THE construction of *opus* (*need*) requires notice. In English we say—

I have need *of your assistance*.

In Latin—

Opus est mihi auxilio tuo,

or, There is need to me *by your assistance*.

The construction of *usus* is the same, though it is not very often met with.

¹ *Attendere.*

² *Game, Caro ferina*, literally wild flesh. *Caro* is often understood.

³ *Vice.*

⁴ Say, *By which the less (quo minus) they used, &c.*

Thus, *ego* and *tu*, *urbem* and *Carthaginem*, are in the same case.

It may be of assistance to observe that the word linked on by *quam* is in the same case as the preceding comparative.

Thus, *scientior* and *tu* are in the same case, so also *majorem* and *Carthaginem* are in the same case.

Examples on Comparison.

An honourable death is better than a disgraceful life.

Men are stronger than women.

She was more beautiful than day.

Summer is longer than winter.

The remedies of human infirmity are naturally¹ more tardy than the evils themselves.

He is taller than his grandfather.

What is heavier than lead?

Nothing is more base than slander.

No apples are finer than mine.

A civil war is more terrible than a foreign (war).

No work can be more worthless than yours, no words more powerful than mine.

The towns of Italy are more wealthy than (those) of Gaul.

The walls of that town are stronger than the gates.

Honesty is better than cunning.

There never has been a queen more beloved than Victoria.

What is stronger than a lion, what sweeter than honey?

It is better to lay-down our arms than to die of hunger.

Hunger is more powerful than steel.

I cannot catch those fish, they are more cunning than I.

Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge.

A disgraceful escape from death is worse than death itself.

Nothing dries sooner than a tear.

No one at Rome was richer than Crassus.

¹ Say, *By nature*.

You can do nothing more pleasing to me than this.

I have raised a monument more lasting than bronze.

The nature of serpents, itself destructive, is fired by thirst more than by any other thing.

Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.

Have you ever seen any one more cowed and humble than Marcus Regulus since the death of Domitian?

In no place did the king delay longer than one day or one night.

On the third night, before dawn, they arrived at a hilly spot, not more than two miles from Caspa.

No alliance is better for thee than ours.

I hold nothing dearer than your friendship.

Examples on Comparison.

(More Difficult.)

Many men think cowardice more base than crime itself.

You cannot hope that you will find an animal more faithful than the dog.

Men who exercise themselves in arms are more ready^s in dangers than others.

They say that no kingdom is more powerful than ours.

It is well known that there never has been a city more powerful than Rome.

Nothing is more terrible than a mother who does not love her children.

We believe that few men have been more virtuous than Socrates.

He went away with me to seek a happier country than ours.

We who reap are richer than you who sow.

I know that you are older than I.

If you do^s this, you will be no better than the Africans.

I who work am happier than you who are idle.

^s *Promptus.*

^s *Future.*

CHAPTER X.

GENITIVE WITH DUTY, ETC., UNDERSTOOD.

IN such sentences as—

It is the *nature* of every man to err,
the word indicating *nature, duty, function, token, &c.*, is often omitted in Latin. Thus the above sentence would become—

Cujusvis hominis est errare,
where the word *natura* seems to be understood before *cujusvis hominis*.

Examples on the Genitive with Duty, &c., understood.

Temerity is a mark of youth, prudence of old age.

It is the duty of a child to obey its parents.

It is the duty of a Christian to fear God alone.

It is ours to command, yours to obey.

It is the function of art to conceal art.

It is the part of a prudent man to restrain the impulses of his benevolence.

It is not the function of this book to relate the nature of the ocean and its tides.

It is the duty of a Roman soldier to conquer or die.

It is the nature of every man to err, but of none but a fool to persevere in error.

Petulance is rather a mark of the young than of the old.

Marcellus said it was neither of his right nor of his power.

It seemed to him the part of a fool to care-for another man's affairs at his own risk.

It is then the duty of your humanity to protect a great multitude of your fellow-citizens from calamity, of your wisdom to see that the calamity of many citizens cannot be separated from the common weal.

Nothing is so much a mark of a narrow and little mind as loving¹ wealth.

This is the mark of a man more desirous of glory² than honour.

It is man's to be affected by grief, to feel it, to bear up against³ it, however, and to admit consolation; not to have no need⁴ of consolation.

CHAPTER XI.

GENITIVE OF THE THING MEASURED.

ADJECTIVES which indicate an indefinite quantity, such as *nimum* (*too much*), *satis* (*enough*), *parum* (*too little*), &c., are generally used in the neuter gender in Latin, followed by a genitive case.

Thus instead of saying—

He has too little *knowledge*,

in Latin we should say—

He has too little *of knowledge*.

*Parum est ei * scientiae.*

This construction is known as the genitive of the thing measured.

Examples on the Genitive of the Thing Measured.

There is no corn left in the city.

You have more courage than skill.

You cannot have too many friends.

The faces of the soldiers were cast-down on the ground, and there was more sorrow than penitence.

Do you bring any news?

¹ Cf. Pt. I. ch. xi.

² Cf. Pt. III. ch. xii.

³ *Resistere.*

⁴ *Non egere.*

* Cf. Pt. III. ch. xvii.

We are come to the extremity of famine.
 We have plenty of wine but too little bread.
 Is there any talent in me?
 In this way much of the day had passed¹.
 This matter has more joy than sorrow.

Examples on the Genitive of the Thing Measured.

(*More Difficult.*)

This, I think, is enough praise.
 I think there is too little spirit and perseverance in you.
 They gave him of the public land as much as twelve oxen
 could plough in one day.
 I have before experienced that there is too little faith (kept)
 with the wretched².
 At Rome there is more danger than honour in innocence.
 The nobility, using³ that victory according to their lust,
 gained themselves more fear than power.
 He gathered together from the fields as much as he could
 of domesticated⁴ cattle.
 He ordered his soldiers to carry as much water as possible,
 and as little food.
 The plain was parched and void of fruit at that time, for it
 was the extreme (end) of the summer.
 And so there fell to the new emperor more anxiety from
 the evil habits of his soldiers, than assistance or hope of good⁵
 from their numbers⁶.

¹ *Procedere.*

² Say, *To the wretched.*

³ *Usus*, past part.

⁴ *Domitus*, from *domare*, to tame.

⁵ Say, *Of good hope.*

⁶ *Copia.*

CHAPTER XII.

GENITIVE PROLATE AND OBJECTIVE.

LET us consider the sentences—

(i.) Now at this instant be mindful of *coming old age*.

(ii.) He had a mind greedy of *gain*.

We see that the adjectives *mindful*, *conscious*, would convey no meaning by themselves, but require a genitive case to help them out.

This same construction is used in Latin. Thus the above sentences would become—

(i.) *Venturae jam nunc memores estote senectae.*

(ii.) *Mens ei cupida lucri.*

It will be observed that many of these adjectives have a kind of transitive force, and that the genitive stands in much the same position to them as the direct object does to the verb. Thus, whether we say—

He desired instant death,

or, He was desirous of instant death,

the words *instant death* may be considered as the object of the words preceding them.

When this is the case, the genitive is called the objective genitive.

The same remarks apply to a genitive of this sort used after certain nouns, such as *love*, *desire*, *memory*, &c.

Thus when we talk about *love of money*, *of money* is clearly not a genitive qualifying the noun *love*, it is an objective genitive.

This distinction is not easy to explain satisfactorily to beginners; it is a point rather relating to theory than practice, and may with advantage be postponed.

Examples on the Genitive Prolate Objective.

He is ever mindful of his word.

The lust of military glory had entered his mind.
Ye are impatient of heat and cold.
Careless of things nearest us, we pursue things far off.
His native town is not unmindful of his name.
There was a slave from Pontus, skilled in song and harp.
The earth will receive thee (as) its lord, powerful over
fruits and seasons.

The people, destitute of all public anxiety through their
vast multitude, began to feel the evils of war.

Ye have always been eager for glory and greedy of praise
beyond other nations.

All the best men were demanding a remedy for the present
licence.

Regardless of recent (events) we praise old times.
Those barbarians are very covetous of cattle.
I am not unmindful of your command, Sextius.
He was ready in soldiering about town¹, unaccustomed to
war.

Italy at that time was full of Greek arts and discipline.
Africa is said to be very fruitful of wild animals.
A trumpeter, himself unskilled in fighting, yet incites others
to the fray.

In Africa are vast tracts bare of herbage.
Carthage, emulous of the Roman power, perished utterly².
Our ancestors were greedy of honour, prodigal of their
money.

Examples on the Genitive Prolative and Objective.

(More Difficult.)

The age, however, was not so barren of virtues, that it has
not shown us good examples also.

In a warlike state, he thought there would be more (men)
the like of Romulus, than of Numa.

¹ *Soldiering about town, militia urbana.*

² *Ab stirpe, literally from the root.*

He was the enemy of a plan, however excellent, which he had not himself proposed.

Not even his friends have denied he was very sparing of his wine.

His disposition was ordinary³, rather without vices than accompanied-by⁴ virtues; he was neither careless of his reputation nor a braggart⁵ (of it), not covetous of other men's money, sparing of his own, greedy of the public, tolerant of his friends and freedmen, without blame if he chanced to have fallen in⁶ with good men, if they happened to be bad⁷ ignorant to⁸ a fault.

Are you ignorant that the port of Cajeta, very much frequented and full of ships, was plundered by pirates while a prætor was looking on?

No rank was free⁹ from fear and danger; the chiefs of the senate were feeble with age, and slothful through long peace; the nobility was lazy and forgetful of war; the knights ignorant of military service.

No one is so free from sorrow¹⁰, as not to have mourned¹¹ the death of some friend.

They think souls are immortal, hence their contempt for dying.

That prince of Greece never wished to have ten men the like of Ajax, but of Nestor.

I am not come to kindle your affections into love for myself, nor to exhort your minds to valour, but I am come to demand¹¹ from you a restraint of your courage, and a measure of your kindness towards me.

³ *Medius.*

⁴ *Cum.*

⁵ *Venditator.*

⁶ *Say, If he had fallen in, pluperf. subj.*

⁷ *Imperf. subj.*

⁸ *Usque ad.*

⁹ *Expers followed by a genitive.*

¹⁰ *Say, That (ut) he has not.*

¹¹ *Postulaturus.*

CHAPTER XIII.

"DIGNUS" AND COGNATE WORDS.

THE adjective *dignus* (*worthy*) and cognate words require special notice. In English we should say *worthy of a thing*; in Latin we must say *worthy by a thing*, using an ablative case, and not a genitive. Thus,

You are worthy of praise,

becomes in Latin,

Tu laude dignus es.

The same point is to be noticed in connexion with the *vero dignor*, (*I deem worthy*): e. g.

I deem you worthy of praise,

Latin,

Dignor te laude.

Dignor is sometimes deponent, meaning *I deem worthy*, and sometimes passive, meaning *I am deemed worthy*.

Examples on "Dignus" and cognate words.

Thou alone art worthy of empire.

He is worthy of death.

How many days are unworthy of light, and yet the day dawns.

I determined to transcribe the acts of the Roman people, as each seemed worthy of record.

No upstart was so illustrious, as not to be¹ considered unworthy of the consulship.

The Romans ever have deemed virtue worthy of honour.

All men thought me worthy of recognition and hospitality.

Things unlike among themselves are deemed worthy of a like honour.

I never thought your son worthy of so great anxiety.

¹ Say, *That he might not be, &c., or, who might not, &c.*

Do you not account so great a prize worthy of a little toil?
 He has hitherto received no punishment worthy of his crime.

CHAPTER XIV.

THE DATIVE.

THE dative may be used to convey a notion of advantage or disadvantage after most verbs or adjectives: e. g.

- (i.) He was very dear *to me*.
- (ii.) Arms alone were wanting *to them*.

Latin,

- (i.) *Mihi erat carissimus.*
- (ii.) *Arma tantum defecere illis.*

As the idiom in this respect is the same both in Latin and English, no difficulty will be experienced here.

Examples on the Dative.

To slaves the household is as-it-were their state.
 Let us not prefer security to honour.
 Periods of transition¹ are seasonable for great attempts.
 We prefer victory to peace.
 Such a supper is scarcely enough for ten.
 I lately heard Virgilius Romanus reading a comedy to a few friends.

There were closing-scenes² equal to the vaunted³ deaths of the ancients.

The mind of Otho was not effeminate like⁴ his body.

To all the most rapacious and abandoned, there remained not lands or capital⁴, but only the instruments of their vices.

¹ *Transitus rerum.*

³ *Laudatus.*

² *Exitus.*

⁴ *Foenus.*

⁴ Say, and like.

The valour and haughtiness of their subjects is displeasing to those in command⁵.

His death was mournful to his friends, and not without regret even to strangers and those unknown to him.

It is not the part of a wise and brave man to succumb to sorrow.

Livy, the most eloquent of ancient historians, has likened the shape of Britain to an oblong target or a two-edged axe.

What speech can be found equal to the virtue of Cnæus Pompey?

To tyrants the good are more suspicious⁶ than the bad, and another's virtue is always formidable.

The delay of the dictator Fabius was not pleasing to the Romans.

In victory it is allowed even to cowards to boast.

He preferred the advantage of his king to reputation or honour.

The fight became more like an affair with robbers⁷ than a battle.

Such haste leaves no room for prayers.

Your gifts have been all snatched-away from me.

Do you make me equal⁸ to you?

Given up to the pleasures of the body, they pass their time in luxury and sloth.

Examples on the Dative.

(More Difficult.)

Woe to the warrior who throws-away his shield.

You sleep much and drink often, both which things are foes⁹ to the body.

Believe that every day has dawned upon you the last.

⁵ Say, *To those commanding.*

⁶ *Suspicious.*

⁷ *Affair with robbers, latrocinium, dat.*

⁸ *To make equal, adaequare.*

⁹ *Inimica, neut. plur.*

Epictetus to those inquiring who was happy answered: "He for whom what he has is enough."

Catiline arranged snares in every way for Cicero, nor was craft or astuteness wanting to him for guarding against them¹⁰.

Who is more friendly to a brother than a brother, or what stranger¹¹ will you find faithful, if you have been a foe to your own?

What is so contrary-to¹² custom as that an army should be entrusted to a very young man, whose age is far from the senatorial grade?

I think that commands were the more often given and armies entrusted to Maximus, to Marcellus, to Scipio, to Marius, and to other great generals, not only on account of their valour, but also on account of their good fortune.

Those but now cautious and prudent became after the event eager and boastful. This is the most unfair condition of command, all men claim success as their¹³ own¹⁴, disasters¹⁵ are imputed to one alone.

The emperor did not give him the salary wont to be offered to a man of proconsular rank, and granted to several by himself.

He told me he had lost his way, and was dying for want of food.

I gave him two pence, and he promised me not to beg again. She is come to fetch the birds you promised her.

Tell her the birds are flown.

By shedding tears, and persistently demanding better (terms) they obtained safety for their city.

When you have given yourself up to carelessness and sloth, you will in vain implore help of the gods¹⁶.

That crop will at length respond to the prayers of the husbandman, which has twice felt the sunshine¹⁷, twice the frost¹⁷.

¹⁰ For guarding against them, *ad cavendum*.

¹¹ Alienus. ¹² Praeter.

¹³ Success—disasters, Lat. *prosperous* (things)—*adverse* (things).

¹⁴ Say, *For themselves*.

¹⁵ Cf. Pt. I. ch. viii.

¹⁶ Sol.

¹⁷ *Frigora*.

To you be arms and courage, leave to me the plan and the direction of your valour.

He trusts himself to the enemy in the absence of his friends ¹⁸.

Alexander the Great used to say that he owed not less to Aristotle than to his father Philip.

Those who had no enemy ¹⁹, were crushed ²⁰ by their friends.

Slaves, born to bondage, are sold once-for-all, and are kept by their masters: the Britons buy service by-the-day ²¹.

Nature intended that his children and relatives should be very dear to every-man.

Warfare and arms, which are honourable to the brave, are also safest for cowards.

Agricola instructed the sons of the British chiefs in the liberal arts; and he is said to have preferred the talents of the Britons to the industry of the Gauls.

He betrothed his daughter to me (when) young, then of surpassing promise ²², and after his consulship he gave her in marriage ²³.

CHAPTER XV.

VERBS GOVERNING A DATIVE.

MANY verbs in Latin govern a dative, when an accusative of the direct object might be expected.

This is to be explained by a notion of advantage, or the opposite, which they convey, but in many instances this notion is so obscure, and there are so many exceptions to any rule

¹⁸ Say, *His friends being absent*,
abl. abs.

²¹ *Quotidianus*.

²² *Surpassing promise, egregia*

¹⁹ Say, *To whom an enemy was* *spes*.
wanting (deesse).

²³ *Collocare*.

²⁰ *Opprimere*.

which may be laid down, that it is best to trust to observation for an acquaintance with these verbs.

In the following examples all such verbs are in italics.

Examples on Verbs governing a Dative.

Congratulate me.

I cannot *resist* your entreaties.

Many of the young nobles *favoured* the attempts of Catiline.

Two kings were *threatening* the whole of Asia, very unfriendly not only to you, but even to your allies and friends.

It is an honourable thing *to benefit* the common weal.

Formerly his own goods sufficiently *pleased* every one.

Farthest Thule will *serve* thee.

I cannot *withstand* your entreaties.

Such words did not *please* even Cato.

Nothing can *resist* our arms.

Some men only *contradict* others.

The event did not *answer* his expectation.

The talents of our countrymen have far *excelled* all others.

Whom should I rather *trust* than thee?

'At one time the Roman people seemed *to rule* all races and nations both by sea and land.

Aurelia hesitated *to marry*¹ Catiline, fearing his son by a former wife², of adult age.

All men *were congratulating* the emperor.

The consul *spared* the citizens, and restored to them all their goods.

He told me every thing, and I *obeyed* him.

Do not *consult* your anger rather than your reputation.

It soon fell to him *to excel* all men in the glory of his genius.

Rocks and deserts *answer* the poet's voice.

They *envy* my honours, let them *envy* then my labour, my freedom from blame³, and my dangers.

¹ *Nubere*, properly, *to veil oneself* for. This verb is only used of the woman; a man is said *ducere uxorem*.

² *A son by a former wife, pri. vignus.*

³ *Freedom from blame, innocentia.*

Jugurtha *succoured* his own men, and *pressed-on*⁴ the wavering⁵ foe.

Help me wretched (man).

Examples on Verbs governing a Dative.

(*More Difficult.*)

Let us go forth from the city *to meet* Cicero on his return⁶.

You are about to rule men who can neither bear absolute servitude, nor absolute freedom.

He was by nature a laggard, and (one) whom cautious designs with system *pleased* rather than success by accident⁷.

Go, madman, and rush through the wild Alps, that you *may please* boys, and become a subject-for-a-theme⁸.

I said this *to persuade* him.

The tree, which God has planted, no blast can *harm*.

His arrival both checked Mithridates, inflamed with unwonted victory, and delayed Tigranes, (*now*) *threatening* Asia with his vast forces.

It is lawful for victors *to command* the vanquished as-they-will⁹.

Now they understand that not without cause did their ancestors wish rather *to obey* the Roman people than *to command* others, when we had magistrates of such moderation.

So easy was the entrance of private individuals to him, that he, who *excelled* princes in rank, in facility (of access) seemed equal to the lowest.

Our ancestors always *obeyed* custom in peace, expediency in war, and always accommodated¹⁰ the plans of new designs to the new accidents of the times.

He considered that this circumstance *had damaged* him with¹¹

⁴ *Instare.*

⁵ *Dubius.*

⁶ *Say, returning*

⁷ *Ex casu.*

⁸ *Declamatio.*

⁹ *Quemadmodum.*

¹⁰ *To accommodate to, accommodate ad.*

¹¹ *Apud.*

an aged prince, that it *would damage* him still more with a young one, by disposition cruel, and made-brutal¹² by a long exile.

Since I cannot *resist* the factions of my enemies, I yield to fortune.

Tiberius *resisted* the consul's authority, and wished to give corn to the people without price.

You could not easily discover whether Sempronia *spared* less her money or her reputation.

It did not seem glorious to Marcus Curius to possess gold, but to *command* those-who-possessed-it.

Jugurtha *charged* Bomilcar, (a man) faithful to himself, to procure assassins for Massiva.

I have heard from my father that elegance *befits* women, toil men.

We think it safer to *rule* willing (men), than (men) constrained.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE DATIVE OF THE COMPLEMENT.

SOMETIMES, instead of a complement agreeing with the subject, the verb 'to be' is followed by a dative of the complement. Thus instead of translating—

The ant is *an example* of great labour,
by—

Exemplum est magni formica laboris,
we may say—

Exemplo est magni formica laboris.
The ant is *for an example* of great labour.

Examples on the Dative of the Complement.

All these things were a great encouragement to the Romans.

¹² *Efferatus.*

I am compelled to be rather a burden than of service¹ to you.

A record of acts performed² is (of) great service.

Men are not a cause-of-anxiety to the immortal gods.

The very age of Galba was a cause of mockery³ and disgust to those accustomed to the youth of Nero.

All new slaves⁴ are a laughing-stock to the household and to their fellow-servants.

To whom were you a protection with your fleets?

You have been for ten years a laughing-stock to the rich.

Arms, not household-stuff, ought to be an honour to you.

The night would be a protection to them (if) conquered.

I have been sent by my father (as) a guard for you.

The fate of Publius Claudius was a calamity also to his sister Claudia.

Examples on the Dative of the Complement.

(More Difficult.)

It has been proved by frequent disasters that the safety of the Roman people is not a cause-of-anxiety to the gods, their punishment is.

Whom will it benefit⁵?

Among the good it was a grievance that, having built an altar in the Campus Martius, he had performed funeral rites to Nero.

With how little a wise man is content, Anacharsis the Scythian is an example.

Many men are given up to debauchery and indolence, and to these their body is a source-of-pleasure⁶, their mind a burden.

A little after, those to whom the death of Damasippus had been a source-of-delight, were themselves dragged-forth.

¹ Say, *Than for a use to you.*

² *Res gestae.*

³ Say, *Was for a mockery.*

⁴ Say, *Every most recent slave.*

⁵ Say, *To whom will it be a good (thing)?*

⁶ Say, *A pleasure*, and so on through the exercise.

Micipsa thought that the virtue of Jugurtha would be an honour⁷ to his kingdom.

My father (when) dying charged me that I should strive to be as much use as possible⁸ to the Roman people, both at home and in war.

The Allobroges long held it uncertain what plan they should adopt⁹.

A naval force was ever a care to him who followed this plan.

Wealth and honour are a burden and a source-of-misery to those who have endured dangers and adversity.

You fear those to whom you ought to be a terror.

There are men to whom honour and duty are a subject-for-gain¹⁰.

When the war was renewed, the consul hastened to transport into Africa supplies, money, and other things which might be of use to the soldiers.

His noble-birth, which was formerly an honour to the general, began to be a source-of-envy.

CHAPTER XVII.

PARTICULAR USE OF THE VERB "SUM" WITH THE DATIVE.

THE use of the dative to indicate possession is very common in Latin; it will best be understood from the following examples:

<i>English.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	
I have a book.	Est mihi liber.	Literally, there is a book to me.
Thou hast a book.	Est tibi liber.	Literally, there is a book to thee.
He has a book.	Est ei liber.	Literally, there is a book to him.
We have a book.	Est nobis liber.	Literally, there is a book to us.
Ye have a book.	Est vobis liber.	Literally, there is a book to you.
They have a book.	Est iis liber.	Literally, there is a book to them.

⁷ *Gloria.*

⁸ *As much as possible—quam maximus.*

⁹ *Capere.*

¹⁰ *Subject for gain, quaestus.*

So also—

I have books.	Sunt mihi libri.	Literally, there are books to me.
I had a book.	Erat mihi liber.	Literally, there was a book to me.
I will have a book.	Erit mihi liber.	Literally, there will be a book to me.

And so on.

Examples on the Verb "Sum" with the Dative.

Those barbarians have blue eyes and yellow hair.

I had no intention to wear away my good leisure in idleness and sloth.

The Gracchi had a spirit not sufficiently temperate.

Metellus had the valour of his soldiers and the advantage of the ground¹, Jugurtha all other things, except soldiers, fit-for-the-occasion².

You will have no quiet day or night after this.

I have all my hope in myself.

The Romans who have a noble name do not despise those who have none.

Nor had they alone an alien mind, who were conscious of the conspiracy, but the whole plebs approved of the undertakings of Catiline through a desire of a new state of things³.

Always those in the state who have no wealth envy the good and ex:ol the bad.

There were a few men at Rome, who had a habit of vending their honour and dishonour⁴.

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

INSTEAD of the gerund acting on an object, the corresponding case of the gerundive is generally (but not always) used.

¹ *The advantage of the ground, locus adversus.*

² *Opportunus.*

³ *Say, Of new things (res).*

⁴ *Say, To whom it was a habit to vend, &c.*

This construction will best be understood from examples.

Thus, *for saving the state* would be in Latin *ad rempublicam servandam* (literally, *for the state to-be-saved*).

So, *of saving the state* would be *reipublicae servandae* (literally, *of the state to-be-saved*).

So also, *by saving the state* would be *republicâ servandâ* (literally, *by the state to-be-saved*).

It may be of some assistance to arrange the construction of the gerund and gerundive in parallel columns.

	Gerund.	Gerundive.
(For) saving the state.	(Ad) servandum rempublicam.	(Ad) rempublicam servandam.
Of saving the state.	Servandi rempublicam.	Reipublicae servandae.
To(or for) saving the state.	Servando rempublicam.	Reipublicae servandae.
By saving the state.	Servando rempublicam.	Republicâ servandâ.

When this construction has been mastered, it will be observed that the noun is attracted to the case of the gerund, and the gerund to the gender and number of the noun.

Examples on the Gerundive.

All things are ready for¹ carrying on the war.

They were deliberating about making peace.

The glory of protecting our liberty will be yours.

The art of catching fish is to-be-learnt by waiting.

In hope of seeing the city we will sup with you.

Fabius went to Rome for the sake of seeing his daughter.

Experience teaches us the art of collecting knowledge.

Cerialis allowed too little time for accomplishing such great designs.

The city was ready to receive and believe every thing new.

The poet Archias brought all his industry and talent to celebrate the praise and glory of the Roman people.

¹ *Ad.*

You will gain for yourself friendships rather by granting favours, than by receiving them.

They wear out their bodies in fortifying woods and swamps amid blows and insults.

Fifty drachmæ seem too much to an ignorant and miserly man for educating his son.

After the supremacy of Lucius Sulla, a great desire came-on Catiline of seizing the public property.

A time was appointed for distributing the money.

You spend your time in building-out² the sea, and levelling mountains.

Examples on the Gerundive.

(*More Difficult.*)

The cause of his drawing up the fleet was to intercept the supplies coming-up from Gaul.

I will now speak about choosing a commander for this purpose³, and giving him authority⁴ over such important matters.

The fathers thought that ambassadors ought to be sent⁵ about making peace.

Those very philosophers in the pamphlets they write about despising fame inscribe their own names.

They somewhat obscurely⁶ praised rest and leisure, and offered their assistance in recommending⁷ an indulgence⁸.

The troops of Fabius Valens also, laying-aside their contempt of the enemy, with the desire of recovering their honour, began to obey their leader more respectfully and uniformly⁹.

He went to see his mother before leaving the city.

We will strive to discover a method of stopping this work.

² *Extruere.*

³ *Ad hoc.*

⁴ *To give a man authority over any thing—præficere quem cui.*

⁵ *Say, Wereto-be-sent(gerundive).*

⁶ *Comparative.*

⁷ *Adprobare.*

⁸ *Excusatio.*

⁹ *Aequabiliter.*

Ready to dissemble every thing, Catiline, with downcast face, and suppliant voice, addressed the senate.

Your ancestors, for the sake of gaining their rights¹⁰ and establishing their dignity¹¹, twice seized the Aventine in arms.

Aulus conceived the hope either of finishing the war, or of obtaining money from the king through terror of his army.

A great desire came-upon Marius of gaining-possession-of that town.

I have taken up arms, not with hostile intent, but for protecting my kingdom.

He committed to them the power¹² of arranging¹³ matters, and of settling the war in whatever way they pleased¹⁴.

By shedding tears and persistently demanding better (terms) they obtained safety for their city.

CHAPTER XIX.

"QUI" WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

It has been pointed out that the relative pronoun has much the same force as a personal or demonstrative pronoun preceded by a conjunction *. In the examples which were given the conjunction *and* or *as* was used; in these cases it was shown that the relative clause was descriptive, or adjectival.

Thus, in the example—

We worship God, { who
and He } created us,

the relative clause *who created us* was shown to describe the antecedent *God* like an adjective.

It must now be learnt that other conjunctions, viz., *in order that*, *because*, *inasmuch as*, *although*, &c., when used with a

¹⁰ Sing.

¹¹ *Majestas*.

¹² *Licentia*.

¹³ *Agere*.

¹⁴ *Whatever they pleased, quilibet agreeing with way.*

* Pt. II. ch. i. & ii.

demonstrative or personal pronoun, may be translated into Latin by the relative.

In all these instances the verb in the relative clause must be in the subjunctive mood. Thus,

We worship God, because He created us,
may be translated into Latin—

Deum veneramur, qui nos creaverit,
where *qui* stands for *because he*.

So,

Cæsar sent messengers to inform the senate,
may be translated—

Cæsar nuncios misit, qui senatum certiore facerent,
where *qui* stands for *in order that they*.

Qui requires the subjunctive also, when it has the force of *such as*: e. g.

Cicero's are not verses which (i. e. such as) will survive.

Ciceronis carmina non sunt ea quæ supersint.

Qui may be used in this way to translate the English infinitive in such sentences as—

(i.) Titus is not a man to fear death.

(ii.) Caius was too prudent to contend with me.

These may be analyzed thus:

	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
(i.)	Titus	is not	... .. a man
	who	would fear	death.
(ii.)	Caius	was	..... too prudent
	as	who	..... with me.

(i.) Titus non est is qui mortem timeat.

(ii.) Caius sagacior erat quam qui mecum contenderet.

Examples on "Qui" with the Subjunctive.

All men praised my good fortune, because I had a son endued with such a disposition.

No friend will shield you, if arms have not protected you.

I am not a man to deceive you.

You are not so ignorant as to think this true.

Cæsar desired for himself a high command, an army, and a new war, that his virtue in it might shine-forth.

I cannot praise you for being idle.

They say that I am feigning¹, and pretend flight, when it was permitted me to remain in the kingdom.

Not armies nor treasures are a protection for a kingdom, but friends such as you can neither constrain by arms nor gain by gold; they are born of duty and honour.

Nature has given reason to man, that he may govern the impulses of his feelings by it².

He bore the appearance of grief in his countenance, as (one) who could more easily disguise joy than fear.

I concede the first place to Alexander, said Scipio, but I come before³ Hannibal, because I conquered him.

We have dreamed a dream, and there is none to interpret it.

Have you nothing to say?

He is an impudent man to contend with me.

Thou alone art worthy to reign⁴.

Let them leave to us toil and danger, for to us these things are sweeter than their banquets.

There were some who thought that Albinus was at that time ignorant of the king's design.

There is neither river nor mountain to separate our borders.

I told you what to do.

There is no speed which can contend with the speed of the mind.

The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to seek help from the Greeks.

The blaze of the sun is brighter than that of any fire, inasmuch as it illumines the whole world.

Although Adherbal had sent messengers to Rome to inform the senate of the murder of his brother and his own mis-

¹ *Fingere verba.*

² Instead of *That by it, say, By which.*

³ *Anteire.*

⁴ *Say, Who may reign.*

fortunes, nevertheless, relying on the number of his soldiers, he prepared to contend in arms.

Catiline was not a man to shrink-from danger.

What is left to stir him, but your power?

Jugurtha gained-over Caius Bæbius the tribune of the people by a great bribe, that by his assistance he might be fortified against right and wrongs of all kinds⁵.

He began to bring-up⁶ mantlets, to throw-up a mound, and to hurry-forward other things which might be of use⁷ for an assault.

When there were first found men of the nobility to prefer true glory to unjust power, the state began to be disturbed, and civil dissension to arise.

I have told you what I wish you to do.

Xerxes promised a reward to any one who would show him a new pleasure.

CHAPTER XX.

THE PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

THE perfect passive participle in English is often confused with the active aorist of the verb; this difficulty will best be overcome by practice.

It may be some help to observe that, if a participle be accidentally mistaken for a verb, no subject can be found for it: e.g.

Overwhelmed by age and sorrow, he returned home.
In this example *overwhelmed* is a participle.

If it be mistaken for a verb, and we try to find its subject by asking the question *who overwhelmed?* we get no answer.

The sentence will of course be analyzed thus—

⁵ Say, *Against all wrongs.*

⁷ Dat. compl.

⁶ *Agere.*

SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.
He, overwhelmed by age and sorrow, }	returned	..... home.

Senectute confectus et dolore domum rediit.

Examples on the Perfect Passive Participle.

He died revered by friend and foe.

Twelve vultures seen before set of sun made Romulus king.

I have received many letters from you, all carefully written.

Taught by calamity, we ought to retain that in our memory.

Spain has often seen her foes overcome and laid-low by this man.

All men regard ¹ Pompey not as one sent from this city, but as fallen from heaven.

The city founded by Romulus was called Rome.

They did not tolerate the liberty of Roman citizens infringed ², will you overlook their life snatched-away?

They avenged the right of an embassy violated in word, will you leave your ambassador slain with every cruelty ³?

They found the consul sitting on a stone, choked ⁴ with blood.

The recollection of pleasure past is the worst pain.

The Roman soldiers, roused by the unwonted tumult, began some to catch-up their arms, others to hide themselves.

The impetuosity of the victors was checked ⁵, lest the enemy strengthened by fresh reinforcements should change the fortune of the battle.

Surrounded on all sides by foes, he challenged death by his audacity.

These rites, by whatever means introduced, are defended by their antiquity.

The sand of this river mixed with nitre, is fused into glass.

¹ *Intueri.*

² *Imminuere.*

³ *Supplicium.*

⁴ *Oppletus.*

⁵ *Reprimere.*

The cavalry sent against them with some light-infantry⁶ contended without-result⁷.

The charm of idleness increases day-by-day⁸, and sloth, hated at first, is at length loved.

A certain inhabitant of that city, noted for a disease of his eyes, embraced the knees of the emperor, with much groaning praying for a cure of his blindness.

This he did by the admonition of the god Serapis, whom that nation, given to superstition, worship in preference to all other gods⁹.

A lion having-seen¹⁰ a she-goat walking on an abrupt rock, advised her rather to come-down into the green plain.

Taught by others' experience that victory is of little (worth) if injustice follow, he determined to eradicate the causes of war.

Men skilled in war observed that no other leader had more sagaciously selected advantageous localities¹¹, and that no fortress planted by Agricola was taken by the assault of the enemy, or abandoned by capitulation or flight.

In the same summer, a cohort of the Usipii, levied in Germany, and sent-over into Britain, dared a great and memorable action.

Having slain their centurion, they embarked¹² in three ships and were carried-out to sea.

Presently, carried hither and thither by the wind, and driven away by the Britons, they came to such-a-pitch¹³ of want, that they eat (first) their most sickly, and-then¹⁴ (such as were) drawn-by-lot.

And thus carried-round Britain¹⁵, having lost their ships

⁶ *Expediti.* ⁷ *Ambigue.*

⁸ *In dies.*

⁹ *Say, Before all other gods.*

¹⁰ *Use conspicari* (deponent).

¹¹ *Say, Opportunities of places.*

¹² *To embark in a ship—ascenders navem.*

¹³ *To such a pitch, &c.—eo ad extremum, &c.*

¹⁴ *Mox.*

¹⁵ *Acc. governed by the preposition circum contained in circumvecti (carried round).*

through ignorance of navigation, taken for¹⁶ pirates, they were intercepted first by the Suevi, and then by the Frisii.

In a few days he set out, ordered by the senate to depart from Italy.

The Britons in-no-way discouraged¹⁷ by the result of the former combat, and awaiting revenge or slavery, taught at length that a common peril is to-be-repelled by unity, had assembled the power¹⁸ of all the states by embassies and treaties.

Few in number, fearful in their ignorance, regarding every thing, the very sky, the sea, the forests (as) strange¹⁹, the gods have handed-them-over to us in-a-way²⁰ enclosed and fettered.

He came to the palace by night, and being received with a brief salutation, and no conversation, he was mingled in the crowd of attendants.

Snatched away in the midst of a healthy old age, he escaped coming²¹ evils, while his dignity was unimpaired, his fame flourishing, and his relatives and friends in safety.

¹⁶ *Habiti pro, &c.*

¹⁷ *Defractus.*

¹⁸ *Vires.*

¹⁹ *Ignotus.*

²⁰ *Quodammodo.*

²¹ *Futurus.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

abl., ablative.	gen., genitive.
acc., accusative.	incl., indeclinable.
adj., adjective.	intrans., intransitive.
adv., adverb.	m., masculine.
c. abl., c. acc., &c., with ablative,	n., neuter.
with accusative, &c.	pl., plural.
c., common (gender).	prep., preposition.
conj., conjunction.	sing., singular.
dat., dative.	subst., substantive.
def., defective.	trans., transitive.
f., feminine.	

The conjugation of a verb is denoted by a figure placed after it. The declension of a noun is left to be inferred from its genitive case.

A.

abandon, relinquo, liqui, licum, 3;
desero, rui, ritum, 3.
abandoned, i. e. *lost to shame*, perditus, a, um.
able, to be, possum, potui, posse.
abode, sedes, is, f.
abound, abundo, 1.
about, circum; *nearly*, fere; *concerning*, de (c. abl.).
above, super (c. acc. and abl.); *from above*, desuper.
abroad, foris.
absent, to be, absum, fui, esse.
absolute, absolutus, a, um.
abuse, vituperatio, onis, f.
abyss, abyssus, 1, m.
accept, accipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.
access, aditus, us, m.
accomplish, perficio, feci, factum, 3.
accomplished, i. e. *cultured*, politus, a, um; doctus, a, um.

accord, of his own, sponte (suâ).
accuse, accuso, 1.
accused, the, reus, i, m.
accustomed, to be, soleo, solitus, 2.
acknowledge, agnosco, novi, nitum, 3.
acquainted with, to be. *See* to know.
acquire, to, acquiro, sivi, situm, 3
paro, 1.
across, trans (c. acc.).
act, ag, factum, i, n.
act-wildly, to, furo, 3.
active, celer, is, e.
adapted, aptus, a, um.
add, addo, didi, ditum, 3.
admire, admiror, 1.
admiration, admiratio, onis, f.
admit, admitto, misi, missum, 3;
recipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.
admonish, admoneo, ui, itum, 2.
admonition, admonitio, onis, f.
adorn, orno, 1.

- adornment, cultus, us, m.
 adult, adultus, a, um.
 advance, to, progredior, gressus, 3;
 procedo, cessi, cessum, 3.
 advantage, commodum, i, n.
 adversity, *res adversae*.
 advise, moneo, ui, itum, 2.
 affability, facilitas, atis, f.
 affair, res, ei, f.
 affection, caritas, atis, f.; *filial*
 affection, pietas, atis, f.
 after, post (c. acc.); ex (c. abl.).
 afterwards, postea.
 again, rursus; iterum.
 against, contra (c. acc.); *when mo-*
 tion is implied, in (c. acc.).
 age, aetas, atis, f.; *old age*, senectus,
 utis, f.
 age, an, saeculum, i, n.
 agree, consentio, sensi, sensum, 4.
 agreement, consensus, us, m.
 aid, auxilium, i, n.
 aim-at, jaculor, 1.
 alarm, to, terreo, ui, itum, 2.
 alliance, societas, atis, f.
 alien, alienus, a, um.
 alive, vivus, a, um.
 all, omnia, e; *on all sides*, undique;
 in all, omnino.
 allow, sino, sivi, situm, 3; *it is*
 allowed, licet.
 ally, socius, i, m.
 alone, solus, a, um.
 already, jam.
 also, et; etiam.
 altar, ara, ae, f.
 always, semper.
 ambassador, legatus, i, m.
 amber, electrum, i, n.
 ambitious, ambitiosus, a, um.
 among, inter (c. acc.); apud (c.
 acc.).
 amphitheatre, amphitheatrum, i,
 n.
 ancestors, majores, um, m.
 ancestral, avitus, a, um; patrius,
 a, um.
 ancient, antiquus, a, um; priscus,
 a, um; vetus, eris.
 and, et; atque; que (enclitic).
 angry, to be, irasci, iratus, 3.
 angry, iratus, a, um.
 animal, animal, alia, n.; *wild ani-*
 mal, fera, ae, f.
 announce, nuntio, 1; praenuntio.
 anoint, unguo, unxi, unctum, 3.
 another, alius, a, ud; *the other*,
 alter, era, erum; *another man's*,
 alienus, a, um.
 answer, to, respondeo, di, nsum.
 answer, an, responsum, i, n.
 anticipate, praevenio, veni, ven-
 tum, 4.
 antiquity, antiquitas, atis, f.
 any, ullus, a, um; quis, qua, quid;
 any you please, quilibet.
 anxiety, cause of, cura, ae, f.
 appear, videor, visus, 2; pareo, ui,
 itum, 2.
 appearance, species, ei, f.
 appease, placo, 1.
 appetite, cupiditas, atis, f.
 apple, pomum, i, n.
 appoint, constituo, ui, utum, 3;
 dico, dixi, ctum, 3.
 approve, probo, 1.
 apt, aptus, a, um.
 ardour, ardor, oris, m.
 arise, orior, ortus, 4; surgo, sur-
 rex, surrectum, 3.
 armed, armatus, a, um.
 arms, arma, orum, n.
 army, exercitus, us, m.
 around, circum (prep. c. acc. and
 adv.).
 arrange, paro, 1; i. e. *settle*, com-
 pono, posui, positum, 3.
 arrival, adventus, us, m.
 arrive, advenio, veni, ventum, 4.
 arrogance, arrogantia, ae, f.
 arrogant, arrogans, tis; superbus,
 a, um.
 arrogate, arrego, 1.
 arrow, sagitta, ae, f.
 art, ars, tis, f.
 as, ut. See Pt. II. ch. ii.; *as it*
 were, tanquam; quasi.
 ask, rogo, 1.
 aspect, vultus, us, m.; aspectus,
 us, m.
 ass, asinus, i, m.
 assailant, oppugnans, tis, m.
 assassin, insidiator, oris, m.
 assault (a town), to, oppugno, 1.

assault, an, oppugnatio, onis, f.
assemble, convenio, veni, ventum, 4.
assent, consensus, us, m.
assist, adjuvo, l.
astuteness, astutia, ae, f.
at, apud (c. acc.); ad (c. acc.).
atrocitv, atrocitas, atis, f.
attach (to oneself), concilio, l.
attack, to, aggredior, gressus, 3;
to attack a town, oppugno, l.
attempt, to, conor, l.
attempt, an, conatus, us, m.
attend, circumsto, stiti, l.
attendant, circumstans, tis; comes, itis, c.
attention, to pay, *dare operam*.
attentively, intente.
attract, traho, xi, ctum, 3.
audacity, audacia, ae, f.
augment, augeo, xi, ctum, 2.
augur, augur, uris, m.
augury, augurium, i, n.; omen, inis, n.
author, auctor, oris, m.
authority, auctoritas, atis, f.
autumn, auctumnus, i, m.
auxiliary, auxiliarius, a, um.
auxiliaries, auxilia, orum, n.
avail, valeo, ui, 2.
avarice, avaritia, ae, f.
avaricious, avarus, a, um; cupidus, a, um.
avenge, ulciscor, ultus, 3.
avidity, aviditas, atis, f.
avoid, vito, l; fugio, fugi, itum, 3.
await, expecto, l; maneo, nsi, nsum, 2.
aware of, to be, novi, def.
awful, terribilis, e; dirus, a, um.
axe, securis, is, f.

B.

bad, malus, a, um; *badly-disposed*, malus.
baggage, impedimenta, orum, n.; sarcinae, arum, f.
bake, coquo, xi, ctum, 3.
band, manus, us, f.; cohors, tis, f.
banish, pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3.
banquet, epulae, arum, f.

barbarian, barbarus, i, m.
barbarous, ferus, a, um.
barber, tonsor, oris, m.
bare, nudus, a, um.
barren, sterilis, e.
base, turpis, e (adj.).
bathe, lavo, lavi, lotum, l.
battle, proelium, i, n.; pugna, ae, f.; *line of battle*, acies, ei, f.
battlement, propugnaculum, i, n.
bear, to, fero, tuli, latum, ferre; *tolerate*, tolero, l.
bearing, i. e. *gait*, habitus, us, m.
beast-of-burden, jumentum, i, n.; *wild-beast*, fera, ae, f.
beat, i. e. *flag*, caedo, cecidi, caesum, 3.
beaten, to be, vapulo, l.
beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrom.
beauty, forma, ae, f.; decor, oris, m.
because, quia; quod.
become, fio, factus, fieri; *beft*, deceo, ui, 2; convenio, veni, ventum, 4.
bed, lectus, i, m.
beft. See become.
before, (conj.) prius-quam; (prep.) ante (c. acc.).
beg, as a *beggar*, mendico, l. See ask.
beggar, mendicus, i, m.; mendica, ae, f.
begin, incipio, cepi, ceptum, 3; coepi, def.
beginning, initium, i, n.
behind, post (c. acc.).
behold, aspicio, spexi, spectrum, 3 video, vidi, visum, 2; *lo!* ecce.
behoves, it, decet.
believe, credo, didi, ditum (c. dat.), 3.
belonging to another, alienus, a, um.
below, infra (c. acc.).
benefaction, benefactum, i, n.
benefit, a, beneficium, i, n.
benevolence, benevolentia, ae, f.
beseech, oro, l.
besides, (prep.) praeter (c. acc.) (adv.) praeterea.
besiege, obsideo, sedi, seassum, 2.
best, optimus, a, um.
betake, conferro, tuli, latum, ferre; recipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.

betray, prodo, didi, ditum, 3.
 betroth, spondeo, sponendi, sponsum, 2.
 better, melior, us.
 between, inter (c. acc.).
 bewail, ploro, 1.
 beware, caveo, i, cautum, 2.
 beyond, ultra (c. acc.); praeter (c. acc.).
 bind, vincio, nxi, nctum, 4.
 bird, avis, is, f.
 birth, partus, us, m; *noble birth*, nobilitas, atis, f.
 bite, mordeo, momordi, morsum, 2.
 bitter, acerbus, a, um.
 black, niger, gra, grum; ater, tra, m.
 blast, flatus, us, m.
 blaze, flamma, ae, f.; ardor, oris, m.
 blind, caecus, a, um.
 blindness, caecitas, atis, f.
 blood, bloodshed, sanguis, inis, m.; eruer, oris, m.
 blot-out, deleo, evi, etum, 2.
 blow, to, spiro, 1.
 blow, a, ictus, us, m.
 blue, caeruleus, a, um.
 boar, aper, pri, m.
 boast, glorior, 1.
 boastful, gloriosus, a, um.
 body, corpus, oris, n.
 bold, audax, acis; *in a good sense*, fortis, e.
 bond, vinculum, i, n.; compes, edis, f.
 bondage, servitus, utis, f.
 bone, os, ossis, n.
 book, liber, bri, m.
 bookseller, bibliopola, ae, m.
 booty, praeda, ae, f.
 border, finis, is, m.
 born, to be, nascor, natus, 3.
 both, (adj.) ambo, ae, o; (conj.) et.
 bound, boundary, finis, is, m.; terminus, i, m.
 boy, puer, i, m.
 boyhood, pueritia, ae, f.
 brandish, quatio, quassi, ssum, 3.
 brave, fortis, e.
 bread-stuff, *res frumentaria*.
 bread, panis, is, m.
 break, rumpo, rupi, ruptum, 3; frango, egi, actum, 3.
 break-down, irrumpo.

break-in, defrango.
 break-out, erumpo.
 break-of-day, mane, incl.; *lux prima*, or *lux*.
 breast-plate, lorica, ae, f.
 bribe, munus, eris, n.; pretium, i, n.
 bribery, largitio, onis, f.
 bridge, pons, tis, m.
 brief, brevis, e.
 bright, clarus, a, um; splendidus, a, um.
 bring, fero, tuli, latum, ferre.
 bring about, efficio, feci, factum, 3.
 bronze, aes, aeris, n.
 brother, frater, tris, m.
 brow, frons, tis, f.
 browse, tondeo, totondi, tonsum, 2.
 buffoon, scurra, ae, m.
 build, aedifico, 1.
 bulk, magnitudo, inis, f.
 bull, taurus, i, m.
 burden, onus, eris, n.
 burdensome, gravis, e; onerosus, a, um.
 burn, uro, ussi, ustum, 3; cremo, 1.
 bury, sepelio, ivi, sepultum, 4.
 business, negotium, i, n.; res, ei, f.
 but, sed; *unless*, nisi.
 buy, emo, emi, emptum, 3.
 by, a (c. abl.); per (c. acc.).

C.

calamity, calamitas, atis, f.; damnum, i, n.
 call, voco, 1.
 call-for, i. e. *demand*, postulo, 1.
 call-out, exclamo, 1.
 camp, castra, orum, n.
 can. *See* able.
 capacious, capax, acis.
 capital, caput, itis, n.
 capitol, capitolium, i, n.
 capitulation, deditio, onis, f.
 captive, captivus, i, m.
 carcass, cadaver, eris, n.
 care, cura, ae, f.
 care, to take care, curo, 1; also *dare operam*.
 carefully, diligenter.
 careless, negligens, tis.

carelessness, socordia, ae, f.; negligencia, ae, f.
 carry, porto, l; veho, veki, vectum, 3. *See* bear.
 carry-off, rapio, rapui, raptum, 3.
 cast, jacio, eci, actum, 3; mitto, misi, missum, 3.
 cast-down, demitto.
 catch, capio, cepi, captum, 3; *game*, capto, l.
 cattle, pecus, pecoris, n.
 cause, causa, ae, f.
 cause, to, efficio, feci, fectum, 3.
 cautiously, caute.
 cavalry, equites, um, m.; equitatus, us, m.
 cease, desino, sivi or sii, situm, 3.
 celebrate, celebros, l.
 centurion, centurio, onis, m.
 ceremony, ritus, us, m.
 certain, certus, a, um; *a certain person*, quidam.
 certainly, certe.
 chain, vinculum, i, n.; catena, ae, f.
 chalk, creta, ae, f.
 challenge, to, provoco, l.
 chance, sors, tis, f.; casus, us, m.
 change, to, mutuo, l.
 change, a, mutatio, onis, f.; *vices*, um, f. (pl.)
 chapel, sacellum, i, n.
 character, mores, um, m.
 charcoal, carbo, onis, m.
 charge, a, impetus, us, m.
 charge, to, i. e. *make a charge*, *facere impetum*.
 charge, to, i. e. *command*, praecipio, cepi, ceptum, 3; mando, l (both c. dat. of the person).
 chariot, currus, us, m.
 charioteer, auriga, ae, m.
 charm, to, delecto, l.
 cheap, vilis, e.
 cheapness, vilitas, atis, f.
 check, to, reprimo, pressi, pressum, 3; impedio, i, vi or ii, itum, 4; retineo, ui, tentum, 2.
 cherish, foveo, fovi, fotum, 2.
 chief, primus, a, um; *a chief*, princeps, ipis, m.
 chiefly, maxime; imprimis.
 child, infans, ntis, c.

children, liberi, orum, m.
 choice, electio, onis, f.
 choked, oppletus, a, um.
 choose, lego, legi, lectum, 3; eligo, 3.
 circuit, ambitus, us, m.
 circumstance, res, ei, f.
 citadel, arx, cis, f.
 citizen, civis, is, c.; *fellow-citizen*, concivis.
 city, urbs, bis, f.; i. e. *state*, civitas, atis, f.
 city-slaves, urbana servitia.
 civil, civilis, e.
 claim, to, posco, poposci, 3; argeo, l.
 clamour-for, postulo, l.
 clear, clarus, a, um; i. e. *evident*, perspicuus, a, um.
 clear, it is, constat, l.
 clemency, mansuetudo, inis, f.
 cling-to, amplexor, plexus, 3.
 close, to, claudo, si, sum, 3.
 cloud, nubes, is, f.
 cloudless, serenus, a, um.
 coast, ora, ae, f.; litus, oris, n.
 coat, vestis, is, f.
 cohort, cohors, rtis, f.
 coin, nummus, i, m.
 colleague, collega, ae, m.
 collect, colligo, legi, lectum, 3; cogo, coëgi, coactum, 3.
 collector, tax, publicanus, i, m.
 colony, colonia, ae, f.
 column, columna, ae, f.; *of men*, agmen, inis, n.
 combat, pugna, ae, f. *See* battle.
 come, venio, veni, ventum, 4; *come-up*, subvenio.
 comedy, comoedia, ae, f.
 comely, decens, ntis; pulcher, chra, chrum.
 command, mandatum, i, n.; i. e. *power*, imperium, i, n.
 command, to, impero, l; mando, l (both c. dat. of person); jubeo, jussi, jussum, 2.
 commander, imperator, oris, m.; dux, ducis, m.
 commence, incipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.
 commiseration, commiseratio, onis, f.
 commit, committo, misi, missum, 3.

- common, communis, e.
 common-people, plebs, plebis, f.;
 vulgus, i, n. and m.
 commonwealth, respublica, rei-
 publicae, f.
 commotion, motus, us, m.; tumultus, us, m.
 companionship, societas, atis, f.
 compare, comparo, i; confero, tuli,
 collatum, ferre.
 comparison, comparatio, onis, f.
 compassion, misericordia, ae, f.
 compel, cogo, coëgi, coactum, 3.
 complain, queror, questus, 3.
 complaint, querela, ae, f.
 conceal, tego, texi, tectum, 3; abdo,
 didi, ditum, 3; oculo, 1.
 concede, concedo, cessi, cessum, 3.
 conceive, concipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.
 concerning, de (c. abl.).
 conciliate, concilio, 1.
 concourse, concursus, us, m.
 condition, conditio, onis, f. (used
 in all senses).
 conference, congressus, us, m.;
 colloquium, i, n.
 confess, fateor, fessus, 2.
 confidence, fiducia, ae, f.; fides,
 ei, f.
 confine, contineo, ui, tentum, 2.
 confirm, confirmo, 1.
 confiscate, publico, 1.
 conflagration, conflagratio, onis, f.
 congratulate, gratulor, 1 (c. dat.).
 connexions, affines, ium, c.; propinqui, orum, c.
 conquer, vinco, vici, victum, 3;
 supero, 1.
 conquest, victoria, ae, f.
 conscious, conscius, a, um.
 consciousness, conscientia, ae, f.
 conscript fathers, i. e. senators,
 patres conscripti.
 consecrate, consecro, 1.
 consecutive, continuus, a, um.
 consent, to, consentio, sensi, sensum, 4.
 consent, consensus, us, m.
 consider, puto, 1; arbitror, 1.
 consist, consto, stiti, statum, 1.
 consolation, solatium, i, n.
 console, solor, 1.
 consolidate, firmo, 1
 conspiracy, conjuratio, onis, f.;
 conspiratio, onis, f.
 conspirator, conspirator, oris, m.
 conjurator, oris, m.
 constancy, constantia, ae, f.
 constrain, cogo, coëgi, coactum, 3.
 consul, consul, ulis, m.
 consult, i. e. *deliberate*, delibero, 1.
 consult, i. e. *ask advice*, consulo,
 sului, sultum, 3 (c. acc.); *to consult the good of*, consulo (c. dat.).
 consume, consumo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3.
 contempt, contemptus, us, m.
 contend, contendo, di, sum, 3;
 certo, 1.
 content, contentus, a, um.
 contented. *See* content.
 contest, certamen, inis, n.
 contingency, casus, us, m.; eventus,
 us, m.
 continual, creber, bra, brum; continuus, a, um.
 continue, maneo, mansi, mansum;
 i. e. *go on*, pergo, perrexi, rectum, 3.
 contradict, contradico, dixi, dictum, 3 (c. dat.).
 contrary, contrarius, a, um.
 contrary to, contra (c. acc.).
 convenient, commodus, a, um
 conveniens, ntis.
 conversation, colloquium, i, n.;
 conversatio, onis, f.
 convey, veho, vexi, vectum, 3.
 corn, frumentum, i, n.
 corpse, cadaver, eris, n.
 correct, to, corrigo, rexi, rectum,
 3; emendo, 1.
 corrupt, to, corrumpo, rupi, ruptum, 3; vitio, 1.
 cost, pretium, i, n.; i. e. *expense*,
 sumptus, us, m.
 cover, to, tego, texi, tectum, 3.
 covet, cupio, ivi, itum, 3.
 covetous, cupidus, a, um; appetens, ntis.
 council, concilium, i, n.
 counsel, consilium, i, n.
 count, to, numero, 1.
 countenance, vultus, us, m.; os,
 oris, n.

country, a, terra, ae, f.; *the country*, rus, ruris, n.; *one's own country*, patria, ae, f.
 courage, virtus, utis, f.; animus, i, m.
 course, cursus, us, m.
 court, to, ambio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 court, a, aula, ae, f.
 coward, timidus, a, um; ignavus, a, um.
 cowardice, timiditas, atis, f.; timor, oris, m.
 cowed, timidus, a, um.
 craft, i. e. *cunning*, calliditas, atis, f.; astutia, ae, f.
 crafty, callidus, a, um; subdolus, a, um.
 crash, fragor, oris, m.
 crazy, delirus, a, um.
 create, creo, 1.
 credible, credibilis, a.
 credit, fides, ei, f.
 crime, crimen, inis, n.; facinus, oris, n.
 cross, a, crux, crucis, f.
 cross, to, trajicio, jeci, jectum, 3; transeo, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 crowd, turba, ae, f.; multitudo, inis, f.
 crown, corona, ae, f.
 crown, to, corono, 1; cingo, cinxi, cinctum, 3.
 cruel, crudelis, e; ferus, a, um.
 cruelty, crudelitas, atis, f.
 cry-out, exclamo, 1.
 cultivate, colo, colui, cultum, 3.
 cunning. *See* craft, crafty.
 cup, poculum, i, n.
 curded milk, *lac concretum*.
 cure, a, remedium, i, n.
 cure, to, medeor (no perf.), 2.
 custom, mos, moris, m.
 cut-off, intercludo, clusi, clusum, 3.
 cut-to-pieces, caedo, cecidi, caesum, 3.

D.

dagger, pugio, onis, m.
 daily, quotidianus, a, um; (adv.) quotidie
 damage, damnum, i, n.; detrimentum, i, n.

damage, to, noceo, ui, itum (c. dat.).
 damaging, molestus, a, um; *to be damaging*, *see* to damage.
 danger, periculum, i, n.
 dangerous, periculosus, a, um.
 dare, audeo, ausus sum, 2.
 daring, i. e. *courage*, audacia, ae, f.
 dark, obscurus, a, um; tenebrosus, a, um.
 darkness, caligo, inis, f.; tenebrae, arum, f.
 dart, telum, i, n.; jaculum, i, n.
 daughter, filia, ae, f.
 dawn, lux, lucis, f.; mane, incl.
 dawn, to, dilucesco, diluxi, 3.
 day, dies, ei, m. and f.; lux, lucis, f.
 dead, mortuus, a, um; *half-dead*, semivivus, necis.
 deadly, fatalis, e.
 deaf, surdus, a, um.
 dear, carus, a, um.
 dearness, caritas, atis, f.
 death, mors, mortis, f.
 debauch, stuprum, i, n.
 debauched, i. e. *given to debauchery*, dissolutus, a, um; perditus, a, um.
 debauchery, libido, inis, f.
 debt, *aes alienum*; debitum, i, n.
 decay, marcesco, 3.
 deceive, decipio, cepi, ceptum, 3; fallo, fefelli, falsum, 3.
 decide, decerno, crevi, cretum, 3.
 decimate, decimo, 1.
 declare, declaro, 1; ostendo, tendi, tensum, 3.
 decree, pass a decree, decerno, crevi, cretum, 3.
 decree, a, decretum, i, n.
 decrepit, decrepitus, a, um.
 deed, factum, i, n.
 deem, aestimo, 1.
 deem-worthy, dignor, 1.
 defeat, a, clades, is, f.
 defeat, to, vinco, vici, victum, 3.
 defence, praesidium, i, n.; tutela, ae, f.
 defend, defendo, di, sum, 3.
 defile, to, polluo, ui, utum, 3.
 delay, mora, ae, f.
 delay, to, moror, 1; cunctor, 1.
 deliberate, delibero, 1; consulto, 1.

- delight**, gaudium, i, n.
delight, to, delecto, 1; juvo, 1.
deliver, libero, 1.
demand, to, posco, poposci, 3; pos-
 tulo, 1.
deny, nego, 1.
depart, excedo, cessi, cessum, 3.
departure, discessus, us, m.
deplore, ploro, 1.
depraved, pravus, a, um.
deprive, spolio, 1; *deprived of*,
 expers, tis.
deputy, legatus, i, m.
describe, describo, scripsi, scriptum,
 3.
desert, to, desero, ui, rtum, 3; lin-
 quo, liqui, lictum, 3.
deserter, transfuga, ae, m.
deserve, mereor, meritum, 2.
design, consilium, i, n.
desire, desiderium, i, n.; cupido,
 inis, f.
desire, to, cupio, ivi, itum, 3.
desirous, cupidus, a, um.
desolate, solus, a, um; desertus, a,
 um.
despair, to, despero, 1.
despair, desperatio, onis, f.
despatch, to, i. e. *send*, mitto, misi,
 missum, 3.
despise, contemno, tempai, temp-
 tum, 3.
destiny, fatum, i, n.; sors, tis, f.
destitute, expers, tis; vacuus, a,
 um.
destroy, perdo, didi, ditum, 3.
destructive, exitiosus, a, um.
determine, statuo, ui, utum, 3.
devastate, vasto, 1.
develope (intr.), cresco, crevi, cre-
 tum, 3.
deviate, digredior, gressus, 3.
devote, devoveo, vovi, votum, 2.
dictator, dictator, oris, m.
die, morior, mortuus, 3.
difference, discrimen, inis, n.
difficult, difficilis, e; arduus, a, um;
 asper, era, um; *with difficulty*, vix.
dig, fodio, fodi, fossum, 3.
dignity, dignitas, atis, f.
dine, prandeo, di, sum, 2; coeno, 1.
dire, dirus, a, um.
direction, i. e. *guidance*, adminis-
 tratio, onis, f.
disagreement, discordia, ae, f.
disaster, damnum, i, n.; clades, is,
 f.; calamitas, atis, f.
discern, cerno, crevi, cretum, 3.
discipline, disciplina, ae, f.
discord, discordia, ae, f.
discouraged, defractus, a, um.
discover, invenio, veni, ventum, 4;
 reperio, reperi, repertum, 4.
discuss, agito, 1; tracto, 1.
disease, morbus, i, m.
disembark, egredior, gressus, 3.
disentangle, explicio, 1.
disgrace, dedecus, oris, n.; flagi-
 tium, i, n.
disgraceful, turpis, e; probosus, a,
 um.
disguise, to, dissimulo, 1.
disgust, taedium, i, n.
dishonour, infamia, ae, f. *See* dis-
 grace.
dismiss, dimitto, misi, missum, 3;
 mitto, 1.
display, to, explico, 1; ostendo, di-
 sum, 3.
displease, dispiceo, ui, itum, 2 (c.
 dat.).
dispose, dispo, posui, positum, 3.
disposed, badly, malus, a, um;
well-disposed, bonus, a, um.
disposition, ingenium, i, n.; in-
 doles, is, f.
dispute, to, disputo, 1.
dispute, a, contentio, onis, f.
dissemble, dissimulo, 1.
dissembler, dissimulator, oris, m.
dissension, dissensio, onis, f.
distance, distantia, ae, f.; *space*
between, intervallum, i, n.
distant, to be, absium, fui, esse;
 disto (no perf. or sup.), 1.
distempered, aeger, gra, grum.
distinguish, decerno, crevi, cretum,
 3.
distinguished, i. e. *illustrious*, in-
 signis, e; clarus, a, um.
distribute, distribuo, ui, utum, 3.
disturb, turbo, 1.
disturbance, perturbatio, onis, f.;
 motus, us, m.

ditch, fossa, ae, f.
 diverse, diversus, a, um.
 divide, divido, visi, visum, 3.
 divine, divus, a, um, divinus, a, um.
 division, a, pars, tis, f.
 do, facio, feci, factum, 3.
 document, documentum, i, n.
 dog, canis, is, c.
 donation, donum, i, n.; donatio, onis, f.
 door, janua, ae, f.; fores, um (used only in pl.).
 doubt, to, dubito, 1.
 doubtful, incertus, a, um; dubius, a, um; *in doubt, in incerto*.
 downcast, demissus, a, um; de-
 jectus, a, um.
 down from, de (c. abl.).
 drachma, drachma, ae, f.
 drag, traho, traxi, tractum, 3.
 draw (a sword), stringo, nxi, ictum. *See drag*.
 draw-away, abtraho, traxi, tractum, 3.
 draw-up (an army), instruo, struxi, structum, 3.
 draw-by-lot, sortior, itus, 4.
 dream, a, somnium, i, n.
 dream, to, somnio, 1.
 dress, vestis, is, f.
 drink, bibo, bibi, 3; poto, 1.
 drive, to, ago, egi, actum, 3; pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3.
 drop, a, gutta, ae, f.
 drown, mergo, si, sum, 3.
 drunk, temulentus, a, um; ebrius, a, um.
 dry, siccus, a, um; aridus, a, um.
 dry, i. e. to become dry, aresco, 3.
 dull, to be, torpeo, ui, 2.
 duly, rite.
 duty, a, officium, i, n.; *to parents*, pietas, atis, f.
 dye, fucus, i, m.
 dye, to, tingo, nxi, netum, 3; imbuo, ui, utam, 3.

E.

eager, ardens, ntis; cupidus, a, um.

eagle, aquila, ae, f.
 earth, the, terra, ae, f.; tellus, uris, f.
 earthenware (adj.), fissilis, e.
 easily, facile.
 east, the, oriens, ntis, m.
 easy, facilis, e.
 eat, edo, edi, esum, 3; vescor, 3 (c. abl.).
 educate, educo, 1; erudio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 effect, to, efficio, feci, fectum, 3.
 effeminate, mollis, e.
 effigy, effigies, ei, f.
 effort, impetus, us, m.
 eight, octo, indcl.
 eighty, octoginta, indcl.
 either, uter, tra, trum; (conj.) aut; vel.
 elated, elatus, a, um.
 elect, eligo, legi, lectum, 3; creo, 1.
 election, electio, onis, f.
 elegance, gratia, ae, f.; elegantia, ae, f.
 elephant, elephantus, i, m.
 eloquence, facundia, ae, f.
 eloquent, facundus, a, um; eloquens, ntis.
 else, alius, a, ud.
 elsewhere, alibi.
 embark, to, *ascendere navem*.
 embassy, legatio, onis, f.
 embrace, to, amplexor, plexus, 3.
 embrace, amplexus, us, m.
 eminent, clarus, a, um; egregius, a, um.
 eminent, to be, supersum, fui, esse.
 emperor, imperator, oris, m.
 empire, imperium, i, n.
 empty, vacuus, a, um; inanis, e.
 emulation, aemulatio, onis, f.
 emulous, aemulus, a, um.
 enact, decerno, crevi, cretum, 3.
 encircle, cingo, cinxi, cinctum, 3.
 encourage, hortor, 1.
 encouragement, hortamen, inis, n.
 end, finis, is, m.
 endeavour, to, conor, 1; nitōr, nixus or nixus, 3.
 endowed, praeditus, a, um.
 endurance, patientia, ae, f.
 endure, patior, passus, 3.

- enemy, hostis, is, m.; *a private enemy*, inimicus, a, um.
 energetic, impiger, gra, grum.
 enervate, mollio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 engage (in combat), configo, fixi, fictum, 3; pugno, 1.
 engrossed, intentus, a, um.
 enjoy, fruor, fructus, 3 (c. abl.).
 enjoyment, voluptas, atis, f.
 enormous, ingens, tis.
 enough, satis, indcl.
 enquire, quæro, quæsi, situm, 3; rogo, 1.
 enraged, iratus, a, um.
 enter, intro, 1; inco, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 enter-on, inco.
 entirely, omnino.
 entrails, viscera, um, n.
 entrenchment, vallum, i, n.; agger, eris, m.
 entrust, credo, didi, ditum, 3; committo, misi, missum, 3.
 entry, introitus, us, m.; aditus, us, m.
 envious, invidus, a, um.
 envoy, legatus, i, m.
 envy, invidia, æ, f.
 equal, æquus, a, um; par, is; *make equal*, æquo, 1.
 equipment, apparatus, us, m.
 eradicate, extirpo, 1.
 erect, erigo, rexi, rectum, 3; extruo, xi, ctum, 3.
 err, erro, 1.
 escape, to, effugio, fugi, fugitum, 3; *means of escape*, refugium, i, n.
 especially, præcipue; imprimis.
 establish, constituo, ui, utum, 3.
 estate, ager, gri, m.
 estimate, aestimo, 1.
 even, etiam; vel; *not even*, ne . . . quidem.
 event, eventus, us, m.; exitus, us, m.
 ever, unquam; *always*, semper.
 everlasting, æternus, a, um.
 every, omnis, e; quisque, quæque, quodque.
 every where, passim.
 evil, malus, a, um; (subst.) malum, i, n.
 examine, investigo, 1.
 example, exemplum, i, n.
 exasperate, exaspero, 1.
 excel, antecello, 3 (c. dat.).
 excellent, egregius, a, um; præclarus, a, um.
 except, præter (c. acc.).
 excite, excito, 1; moveo, movi, motum, 2.
 excitement, motus, us, m.
 excuse, excuso, 1.
 exercise, exerceo, ui, itum, 2.
 exhort, cohortor, 1.
 exile, exilium, i, n.
 exile, an, exul, ulis, m.
 exist, existo, stiti, stitum, 3.
 expect, spero, 1; expecto, 1.
 expectation, expectatio, onis, f.; spes, spei, f.
 expediency, utilitas, atis, f.
 expedient, utilis, e.
 expense, sumptus, us, m.
 experience, experientia, æ, f.; usus, us, m.
 experience, to, experior, expertus, 4.
 explain, explico, 1.
 exploit, factum, i, n.; facinus, oris, n.
 export, exporto, 1.
 expression (of face), vultus, us, m.
 extent, spatium, i, n.
 extinguish, extinguo, nxi, nctum, 3.
 extol, laudo, 1.
 extravagance, sumptus, us, m.
 extreme, extremus, a, um.
 extremely, valde. 2
 extremity, extremum, i, n.
 eye, oculus, i, m.

F.

- fable, fabula, æ, f.
 fabulous, fabulosus, a, um.
 face, os, oris, n.; vultus, us, m.
 facility, facilitas, atis, f.
 faction, factio, onis, f.; partes, ium, f.
 factious, factiosus, a, um.
 fade, marcesco, 3.
 fail, deficio, feci, fectum, 3.
 fair, pulcher, chra, chrum. *See* just.

- faith**, fides, ei, f.
faithful, fidus, a, um.
fall, cado, cecidi, casum, 3; labor, lapsus, 3.
false, falsus, a, um.
fame, fama, ae, f.
family, domus, us, f.; *household*, familia, ae, f.
famine, fames, is, f.
famous, clarus, a, um; insignis, e; celebrer, bra, brum.
far, procul (adv.).
farm, praedium, i, n.
fashion, mos, moris, m.; consuetudo, inis, f.
fate, fatum, i, n.
father, pater, tris, m.
fatherland, patria, ae, f.
fatigue, lassitudo, inis, f.; labor oris, m.
fault, culpa, ae, f.
favour, to, faveo, favi, fautum, 2 (c. dat.).
favour, gratia, ae, f.
fear, timor, oris, m.; metus, us, m.; formido, inis, f.
fear, to, timeo, ui, 2; metuo, ui, 3.
feast, epulae, arum, f.
features, ora, orum, n. *See* countenance.
feeble, infirmus, a, um.
feed, pascor, pastus, 3; vescor, 3 (c. abl.).
feel, sentio, sensi, sensum, 4.
feelings, animi, orum, m.
feign, fingo, finxi, fictum, 3.
fellow-citizen, concivis, is, c.
ferocious, ferus, a, um; immanis, e.
ferocity, feritas, atis, f.; saevitia, ae, f.
fertile, fertilis, e; ferax, acis.
fetch, i. e. *summon*, arcesso, ivi, itum, 3. *See* bring.
fetter, vinculum, i, n.; compes, edis, m.
fetter, to, vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4.
few, paucus, a, um.
fickle, varius, a, um; incertus, a, um.
fiction, *res fictae*.
field, ager, gri, m.; campus, i, m; *of the field* (adj.) agrestis, e.
fierce, ferox, ocis; saevus, a, um.
fifty, quinquaginta, indcl.
fight, pugna, ae, f.
fight, to, pugno, 1.
figure, figura, ae, f.; forma, ae, f.
filial affection, pietas, atis, f.
fill, repleo, plevi, pletum, 3.
finally, denique.
finance, vectigalia, um, n. pl.
find, invenio, veni, ventum, 4.
finish, conficio, feci, factum; perago, egi, actum, 3.
fire, ignis, is, m.
fire, to, i. e. *set fire to*, accendo cendi, censum, 3.
firm, firmus, a, um; constans, tis.
first, primus, a, um; (adv.) primum.
fish, a, piscis, is, m.
fit, aptus, a, um.
five, quinque, indcl.
fix, figo, xi, xum.
flame, flamma, ae, f.
flatter, adolor, 1.
flee, fugio, fugi, fugitum, 3.
fleet, a, classis, is, f.
flesh, caro, carnis, f.
flight, fuga, ae, f.; *of a bird*, volatus, us, m.
flog, caedo, cecidi, caesum, 3.
flourish, floreco, ui, 2.
flow, fluo, xi, ctum, 3.
flower, flos, floris, m.
fluctuating, varius, a, um.
fluency, copia, ae, f.
fly. *See* flee.
fly (of a bird), volo, 1.
foe, hostis, is, m.
follow, sequor, secutus, 3.
follower, comes, itis, c.
following, i. e. *retinus*, comitatus, us, m.
food, cibus, i, m.
fool, foolish, stultus, a, um.
foot, pes, pedis, m.
for, (conj.) nam; enim; (prep.) pro (c. abl.).
forbid, veto, ui, vetitum, 1; prohibeo, ui, itum, 2.
force, vis, acc. vim, abl. vi.
force, to. *See* compel.
forced marches, *magna itinera*.
forces, copiae, arum, f.

foreign, externus, a, um.
 foresee, provideo, vidi, visum, 2.
 foreseeing, providus, a, um.
 forest, sylva, ae, f.
 forget, obliviscor, oblitus, 3 (c. gen.).
 forgetful, immemor, oris.
 forgetfulness, oblivio, onis, f.
 form, forma, ae, f.
 former, prior, us; superior, us.
 formerly, olim.
 formidable, formidolosus, a, um;
 timendus, a, um.
 fort, castrum, i, n.
 fortify, munio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 fortitude, fortitudo, dinis, f.
 fortunate, felix, icis.
 fortune, fortuna, ae, f.; *good fortune*, felicitas, atis, f.
 forty, quadraginta, indcl.
 forum, forum, i, n.
 found, to, condo, didi, ditum, 3.
 founder, conditor, oris, m.
 four, quatuor, indcl.
 frame, i. e. *body*, corpus, oris, n.
 fraud, fraus, fraudis, f.
 fray. *See* battle.
 free, liber, bera, berum; *expers*, tia.
 free, to, libero, 1.
 freedman, libertus, i, m.
 freedom, libertas, atis, f.
 frequent, creber, bra, brum; *assiduus*, a, um.
 frequented, creber, bra, brum.
 frequently, crebro; *saepe*.
 fresh, recens, tis; novus, a, um.
 friend, friendly, amicus, a, um.
 friendship, amicitia, ae, f.
 frighten, terreo, ui, itum, 2.
 from, a; e or ex; de (all c. abl.).
 frost, gelu, indcl.
 frugal, parvus, a, um.
 fruit, fructus, us, m.; *fruges*, um, f.
 fruitful, fertilis, e; *ferax*, acis.
 fugitive, fugitivus, a, um.
 fulfil, perficio, feci, factum, 3.
 full, plenus, a, um.
 funeral, a, funus, eris, n.; *funeral rites*, inferiae, arum, f.
 funeral (adj.), funebris, e.
 furrow, sulcus, i, m.
 fuse, excoquo, coxi, coctum, 3.
 future, futurus, a, um.

G.

gain, quaestus, us, m.; *lucrum*, i, n.
 gain, to, acquiro, quisivi, quisitum;
 paro, 1.
 gain-strength, firmor, 1.
 gain-possession-of, potior, itus, 4
 (c. abl.); *occupo*, 1.
 gait, incessus, us, m.
 game, i. e. *sport*, ludus, i, m.
 game, ferina (caro), ae.
 garland, corona, ae, f.; *sertum*, i, n.
 garment, vestis, is, f.
 garrison, praesidium, i, n.
 gate, porta, ae, f.
 gather, colligo, legi, lectum, 3.
 gaze-on, intueor, tuitus, 2; *specto*, 1; *inspicio*, *spexi*, *spectrum*, 3.
 gem, gemma, ae, f.
 general, a, imperator, oris, m.;
dux, *ducis*, m.
 generally, *fero*.
 genius, ingenium, i, n.
 gentleness, comitas, atis, f.; *lenitas*, atis, f.
 get. *See* gain.
 gift, donum, i, n.; *munus*, eris, n.
 girl, puella, ae, f.
 give, do, dedi, datum, 1; *dono*, 1;
tribuo, ui, utum, 3.
 give-back, reddo, didi, ditum, 3.
 give-up, dedo.
 glad, laetus, a, um.
 glass, vitrum, i, n.
 glitter, mico, ui, 1.
 globe, globus, i, m.
 gloomy, obscurus, a, um.
 glory, gloria, ae, f.; *fama*, ae, f.
 glow, ardor, oris, m.
 glow, to, ardeo, arsi, arsum, 2.
 glut, satio, 1.
 gluttony, ganea, ae, f.
 go, eo, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 go-by, praetereo, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 go-forth, exeo.
 go-on, procedo, cessi, cessum, 3.
 goat, caper, pri, m.; *she-goat*, *capella*, ae, f.
 god, deus, i, m.
 gold, aurum, i, n.
 golden, aureus, a, um.

good, bonus, a, um.
 good-nature, facilitas, atis, f.
 goodwill, benevolentia, ae, f.; bonitas, atis, f.
 govern, rego, rexi, rectum, 3; impéro, 1 (c. dat.).
 government, imperium, i, n.
 grace, gratia, ae, f.; elegantia, ae, f.; decor, oris, m.
 grace, to, decoro, 1.
 graciousness, facilitas, atis, f.
 grade, gradus, us, m.
 grandeur, splendor, oris, m.; magnitudo, inis, f.
 grandfather, avus, i, m.
 grandson, nepos, otis, m.
 grant. *See* give.
 grass, herba, ae, f.; gramen, inis, n.
 grateful, gratus, a, um.
 gratitude, gratia, ae, f.
 gray, canus, a, um.
 great, magnus, a, um; grandis, e.
 greatness, magnitudo, inis, f.
 greedy, avidus, a, um.
 green, viridis, e.
 green, to grow, viresco, 3.
 grief, dolor, oris, m.; luctus, us, m.
 grieve, doleo, ui, itum, 2.
 grievance. *See* grief.
 groan, to, gemo, ui, itum, 3.
 groan, a, gemitus, us, m.
 groaning. *See* groan.
 ground, humus, i, f.; *on the ground*, humi.
 grove, lucus, i, m.
 grow, cresco, crevi, cretum, 3.
 guard, custos, odis, m. *See* garri-son.
 guard, to, custodio, ivi or ii, itum, 4; tueor, uitus, 2.
 guide, a, dux, ducis, m.
 guide, to, duco, duxi, ductum, 3.
 guilt, culpa, ae, f.; scelus, eris, n.

H.

habit, mos, moris, m.
 hair, crinis, is, m.; *of an animal*, pilus, i, m.

half, dimidium, i, n.
 hallowed, sanctus, a, um; sacer, cra, crum.
 halt, consisto, stiti, stitum, 3.
 hand, manus, us, f.; *right-hand*, dextra; *left-hand*, sinistra.
 hand-down, trado, didi, ditum, 3.
 handsome, pulcher, chra, chrum.
 handy, opportunus, a, um.
 hang, pendeo, pependi, pensum, 2 (tr.); pendo, pependi, pensum (intr.).
 happen, accido, idi, 3; contingo, tigi, 3.
 happy, beatus, a, um; felix, icis.
 harass, vexo, 1.
 hard, durus, a, um.
 hardihood, fortitudo, inis, f.
 harm, detrimentum, i, n.
 harmful, noxius, a, um; nocens, tis.
 harmless, innoxius, a, um; innocens, tis.
 harp, cithara, ae, f.
 harvest, messis, is, f.
 haste, festinatio, onis, f.
 hasten, festino, 1; propero, 1.
 hastily, temere.
 hate, odium, i, n.
 hate, to, odi, def.
 hateful, odiosus, a, um.
 have, habeo, ui, itum, 2.
 haughty, ferox, ocis; superbus, a, um.
 haunt, to, frequento, 1.
 he, ille, a, ud; is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc.
 head, caput, itis, n.
 headlong, praecipis, cipis.
 health, salus, utis, f.
 healthy, sanus, a, um; *healthful*, saluber, bris, bre.
 heap, acervus, i, m.
 hear, audio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 heart, cor, cordis, n.
 hearth, focus, i, m.
 heat, calor, oris, m.; aestus, us, m.
 heaven, caelum, i, n.
 heavy, gravis, e.
 heel, calx, cis, f.
 heifer, juvenus, i, m.
 heir, heres, edis, c.

help, auxilium, i, n.
help, to, juvo, juvi, jutum, 1; subvenio, veni, ventum, 4 (c. dat.).
hence, hinc.
herb, herbage, herba, ae, f.
here, hic.
hesitate, dubito, 1; cunctor, 1.
hesitation, haesitatio, onis, f.
hide, condo, didi, ditum, 3; oculo, cului, cultum, 3.
hiding-place, latebra, ae, f.
high, altus, a, um.
hill, collis, is, m.; clivus, i, m.
hilly, acclivis, e.
himself, se (acc.).
hinder, prohibeo, ui, itum, 2; impedio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
historian, historicus, i, m.
hither, huc; *hither and thither*, huc . . . illuc.
hitherto, hactenus.
hoard. See heap.
hold, teneo, ui, 2; habeo, ui, itum, 2 (in every sense).
holidays, feriae, arum, f.
hollow, cavus, a, um.
hollow-out, to, cavo, 1.
holy, sacer, cra, crum; sanctus, a, um.
home, domus, i or us, f.; *at home*, domi.
honest, probus, a, um; justus, a, um.
honesty, probitas, atis, f.
honey, mel, mellis, n.
honour, honor, oris, m.; laus, dis, f.; *word of honour*, fides, ei, f.
hope, spes, ei, f.
hope, to, spero, 1.
horde, turba, ae, f.
horn, cornu, us, n.
horrid, horridus, a, um.
horse, equus, i, m.
hospitality, hospitalitas, atis, f.; hospitium, i, n.
hostile, infensus, a, um; inimicus, a, um.
hour, hora, ae, f.
house, domus, us, f.; *senate-house*, curia, ae, f.
household, familia, ae, f.
household-stuff, suppellex, lectilis, f.

hover, circumvolito, 1.
how, quam; quomodo; *how great*, quantus, a, um; *how many*, quot; *how often*, quoties; *how long*, quamdiu.
however, tamen.
huckster, lixa, ae, m.
huge, ingens, tis; vastus, a, um.
human, humanus, a, um; *human-being*, homo, inis, c.
humanity, i. e. *clemency*, mansuetudo, inis, f.
humble, humilis, e.
humidity, humiditas, atis, f.
hunger, fames, is, f.
hunt, venor, 1.
hunting, *hunting-expedition*, venatio, onis, f.
hurdle, crates, is, f.
hurl, jacio, jeci, jactum, 3.
hurry, to, i. e. *hasten*, festino, 1; propero, 1; *carry-off*, rapio, rapui, raptum, 3.
hurry. See haste.
hurtful, noxius, a, um.
husband, vir, viti, m.; maritus, i, m.
husbandman, agricola, ae, m.
husbandry, agricultura, ae, f.

I.

I, ego, mei; *I for my part*, equidem.
idle, ignavus, a, um; segnis, e; *useless*, vanus, a, um.
idler, ignavus, a, um.
idleness, ignavia, ae, f.; *segnities*, ei, f.
if, si.
ignorant, ignarus, a, um; nescius, a, um; indoctus, a, um.
ignorant, to be, ignoro, 1; nescio, ii, 4.
ill, malus, a, um; (subst.) malum, i, n.
ill-timed, inopportunos, a, um.
illumine, illustro, 1.
illustrious, clarus, a, um; insignis, e; egregius, a, um.
image, imago, inis, f.
imagine, cogito, 1.
imitate, imitor, 1.

immediately, statim ; extemplo.
immortal, immortalis, e.
immortality, immortalitas, atis, f.
impatient, impatiens, tis.
impede, impedio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
impel, impello, pulsus, pulsum, 3 ; instigo, 1.
imperial, imperatorius, a, um.
impious, impius, a, um ; improbus, a, um.
implant, insero, sevi, situm, 3.
implore, oro, 1.
important, magnus, a, um.
importune, fatigo, 1.
impose, impono, posui, positum, 3.
impudent, impudens, tis.
impulse, motus, us, m.
impunity, with, impune.
impute, imputo, 1.
in, in (c. abl.).
inability, imperitia, ae, f.
inaction, inertia, ae, f. *See* idleness.
incensed, iratus, a, um.
incentive, irritamentum, i, n.
inch, digitum, i, n.
incidence, occasio, onis, f.
incite, stimulo, 1 ; moveo, movi, motum, 2.
increase, to, (trans.) augeo, auxi, auctum, 2 ; (intrans.) cresco, crevi, cretum, 3.
incredible, incredibilis, e.
incur (expense), contraho, traxi, tractum, 3.
indeed, quidem (enclitic).
individual, a private, privatus, i.
indolence, socordia, ae, f. *See* idleness.
indolent. *See* idle.
industry, industria, ae, f. ; studium, i, n. ; labor, oris, m.
infamous, turpis, e ; ignominiosus, a, um.
infantry, peditatus, us, m.
infatuation, amentia, ae, f.
infirm, infirmus, a, um.
infirmity, infirmitas, atis, f.
infiame, incendio, di, nsum, 3.
influence, to, moveo, movi, motum, 2.
inform, to, *certiorem facere*.
informer, delator, oris, m.

inglorious, inglorius, a, um.
inhabit, habito, 1 ; incolo, colui, cultum, 3.
inhabitant, incola, ae, c.
injure, noceo, nocui, itum, 2 (c. dat.).
injured, laesus, a, um.
injustice, injuria, ae, f.
inlaid, laqueatus, a, um.
innocence, innocentia, ae, f.
inquire, quaero, sivi, situm, 3 ; rogo, 1.
inquiry, quaestio, onis, f.
insatiable, inexplebilis, e.
inscribe, inscribo, psi, ptum, 3.
insolence, insolentia, ae, f.
insolent, insolens, tis.
inspect, inspicio, spexi, spectrum, 3.
inspire, inspiro, 1 ; stimulo, 1.
instead of, pro (c. abl.).
instinct, natura, ae, f.
instruct, doceo, ui, doctum, 2 ; erudio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
instrument, instrumentum, i, n.
insult. *See* abuse.
integrity, integritas, atis, f.
intend, statuo, ui, utum, 3.
intent, intentus, a, um.
intention, consilium, i, n.
intercept, intercludo, clusi, clusum, 3.
intercourse, conversatio, onis, f. sermo, onis, m.
interlaced, innexus, a, um.
interpret, interpretor, 1.
into, in (c. acc.).
introduce, induco, xi, ctum, 3.
invade, invado, vasi, vasum, 3.
invincible, invictus, a, um.
invoke, invoco, 1.
iron, ferrum, i, n.
irritate, irrito, 1.
island, insula, ae, f.
it. *See* he.
ivory, ebur, oris, n.
ivy, hedera, ae, f.

J.

javelin, jaculum, i, n.
jest, jocus, i, m.
join, jungo, nxi, nctum, 3.

journey, iter, itineris, n.
 joy, gaudium, i, n.
 judge, judex, icis, m.
 judge, to, arbitrator, l.
 judgment, judicium, i, n.
 just, justus, a, um; æquus, a, um.
 justice, justitia, æ, f.

K.

keep, teneo, ui, 2; servo, 1; *keep-in*, contineo.
 kill, interficio, feci, fectum, 3. *See* slay.
 kind, i. e. *sort*, genus, eris, n.
 kindle, accendo, di, nsum, 3.
 kindly, benevolus, a, um.
 kindness, kindness, bonitas, atis, f.; caritas, atis, f.; *a kindness*, beneficium, i, n.; gratia, æ, f.
 kindred, cognati, orum; propinqui, orum.
 king, rex, regis, m.
 king, to be a, regno, 1.
 kingdom, regnum, i, n.
 knave, nebulo, onis, m.
 knee, genu, us, n.
 knight, eques, itis, m.
 know, scio, ivi, itum, 4; novi, def.
 knowledge, scientia, æ, f.

L.

laborious, operosus, a, um; arduus, a, um.
 labour, labor, oris, m.
 labour, to, laboro, 1.
 laggard, cunctator, oris, m.; ignavus, a, um.
 lake, lacus, us, f.
 lamb, agnus, i, m.
 lame, claudus, a, um.
 lament, (trans.) lugeo, xi, ctum, 2; plango, xi, nctum, 3; (intrans.) doleo, ui, itum, 2.
 lamentation, maeror, oris, m. *See* grief.
 land, terra, æ, f.; ager, gri, m.
 large, magnus, a, um; grandis, e.
 largess, largitio, onis, f.

last, ultimus, a, um; extremus, a, um.
 lasting, perennis, e.
 last, at, tandem; demum.
 late, serus, a, um; *recent*, recens, tis; novus, a, um.
 lately, nuper.
 latter, *the former*... *the latter*, ille... hic.
 laughing-stock, ludibrium, i, n.
 lavish, prodigus, a, um.
 law, lex, legis, f.
 lawful, fas, incl. *it is lawful*, licet.
 lay, lay aside, pono, posui, positum, 3.
 lazy, socors, cordis; ignavus, a, um.
 lead, plumbum, i, n.
 lead, to, duco, xi, ctum, 3.
 leader, dux, ucis, m.
 learn, disco, didici, 3.
 learned, doctus, a, um; eruditus, a, um.
 learning, doctrina, æ, f.; disciplina, æ, f.
 learner, discipulus, i, m.
 least, minimus, a, um.
 leave, permissio, onis, f.
 leave, to, relinquo, liqui, lictum, 3.
 left, reliquus, a, um.
 left (hand), sinister, tra, trum.
 leg, crus, cruris, n.
 legate, legatus, i, m.
 legion, legio, onis, f.
 legionary, legionarius, a, um.
 leisure, otium, i, n.
 lend, credo, didi, ditum, 3.
 length, at, tandem; demum.
 less, minor, us; *much less*, (conj.) nedum.
 lest, ne.
 letter, epistola, æ, f.; litteræ, arum, f.; *of the alphabet*, littera, æ, f.
 level, æquus, a, um.
 level, to, æquo, 1.
 levy, conscribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3.
 liberal, liberalis, e; *liberal arts*, *ingenue artes*.
 liberality, munificentia, æ, f.
 liberate, libero, 1.
 liberty, libertas, atis, f.
 licentiousness, licentia, æ, f.
 lie, i. e. *tell lies*, mentior, itus, 4.

lie, jaceo, ui, itum, 2; recumbo, cubui, cubitum, 3.
 life, vita, ae, f.
 light, lux, lucis, f.; lumen, inis, n.
 light, i. e. *not heavy*, levis, e.
 lightness, levitas, atis, f.
 lightning, fulgur, uris, n.
 like, similis, e.
 liken, assimulo, 1.
 limb, artus, us, m.; membrum, i, n.
 limit, finis, is, m.; limes, itis, m.
 line, *of a poem*, versus, us, m.;
line-of-battle, acies, ei, f.; *line-of-march*, agmen, inis, n.
 lineage, stirps, pis, f.
 lion, leo, onis, m.
 literature, litterae, arum, f.
 little, parvus, a, um; (adv.) paulum.
 live, vivo, vixi, victum, 3.
 livelihood, victus, us, m.
 load, a, onus, eris, n.
 load, to, onero, 1.
 locality, locus, i, m. (either sing. or plur.), nom. pl. loci or loca.
 lofty, altus, a, um.
 long, longus, a, um; *for a long time*, diu; *how long*, quamdiu.
 longstanding, *of* longstanding, vetus, eris.
 look, look at, aspicio, spexi, spectum, 3; intueor, itus, 2.
 look, aspectus, us, m.; species, ei, f.
 lord, dominus, i, m.
 lose, perdo, didi, ditum, 3; amitto, misi, missum, 3.
 loss, damnum, i, n.
 lot, sors, tis, f.
 love, to, amo, 1; diligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
 love, amor, oris, m.
 lover, amans, tis, c.
 low, lowly, humilis, e.
 lucky, felix, icis; faustus, a, um.
 lust, cupido, inis, f.
 luxury, luxuria, ae, f.; luxus, us, m.
 lyre, lyra, ae, f.; fides, um, f.

M.

mad, insanus, a, um; amens, tis.
 mad, to be, insanio, ivi or ii, 4.

madness, insanis, ae, f.; amentia, ae, f.
 magistrate, magistratus, us, m.
 magnanimity, magnanimitas, atis, f.
 maid, virgo, inis, f.; *maid-servant*, ancilla, ae, f.
 majority, *pars major*.
 make, to, facio, feci, factum, 3.
 make (of body), habitus, us, m.
 make over, transfero, tuli, latum, ferre.
 man, homo, inis, c.; vir, viri, m.
 manhood, virtus, utis, f.
 manifest, perspicuus, a, um.
 manly, virilis, e; *brave*, fortis, e.
 manner, mos, moris, m.; modus, i, m.
 mantelet, vinea, ae, f.
 many, multus, a, um.
 marble, marmor, oris, n.
 march, a, iter, itineris, n.
 march, to, proficiscor, factus, 3.
See go.
 mark, a, signum, i, n.; nota, ae, f.
 mark, noto, 1.
 marriage, matrimonium, i, n.; *marriage-ceremony*, nuptiae, arum, f.
 marry, *as a man*, duco, xi, ctum, 3; *as a woman*, nubo, nupsi, nuptum, 3 (c. dat.).
 marah, palus, udia, f.
 martial, martius, a, um.
 marvellous, mirus, a, um.
 mass, moles, is, f.; pondus, eris, n.
 master, dominus, i, m.; *of a school*, magister, tri, m.
 matter, i. e. *affair*, res, rei, f.
 matters, it, refert.
 meanwhile, interea.
 measure, to, metior, mensus, 4.
 measure, i. e. *limit*, modus, i, m.
See plan.
 meat, caro, carnis, f.
 meditate, cogito, 1.
 meet, to, occurro, curri, cursum, 3 (c. dat.).
 meet, aptus, a, um.
 memorable, memorandus, a, um; insignis, e.
 merchant, mercator, oris, m.
 mercy, clementia, ae,

messenger, nuncius, i, m.
metal, metallum, i, n.
method, modus, i, m.
middle, medius, a, um; *in the midst*, in medio.
mien, species, ei, f.; vultus, us, m.
might, vis, acc. vim, abl. vi, f.
mighty, potens, tis; ingens, tis.
mildness, lenitas, atis, f.
mile, say *a thousand paces*.
military, militaris, e; *military-service*, militia, ae, f.
milk, lac, lactis, n.
millstone, mola, ae, f.
mind, mens, tis, f.; animus, i, m.
mindful, memor, oris.
mine, meus, a, um.
minge, misceo, ui, xtum, 2.
miraculous, mirificus, a, um.
mirror, speculum, i, n.
miserly, a miser, avarus, a, um; parvus, a, um.
miserable, miser, era, erum. *See sad*.
miserably, misere.
misery, dolor, oris, m. *See grief*.
misfortune, malum, i, n.; calamitas, atis, f.
missile, missilis, e.
mistress, hera, ae, f.
mix, misceo, ui, xtum, 2.
mob, multitudo, inis, f.; turba, ae, f.
mock, ludo, lusi, sum, 3.
mockery, ludibrium, i, n.
moderation, moderatio, onis, f.
modern, recens, tis.
modesty, modestia, ae, f.
moist, humidus, a, um.
moisture, humor, oris, m.
mole, talpa, ae, c.
money, sum of money, pecunia, ae, f.
month, mensis, is, m.
monument, monumentum, i, n.
moon, luna, ae, f.
more, plus, incl. in sing. except pluris, *of more value*, pl. plures, plura, &c.
moreover, praeterea; quin.
morning, mane, incl.
mortal, mortalis, e.
mother, mater, tris, f.
motion, motus, us, m.

mound, *in fortification*, agger, eris, m.
mountain, mons, tis, m.
mountaineer, montanus, i, m.
mourn, lugeo, xi, ctum, 2. *See lament*.
mournful, luctuosus, a, um; maestus, a, um. *See sad*.
mourning, aerumna, ae, f.; luctus, us, m.
mouth, os, oris, n.
move, moveo, movi, motum, 2 (trans.).
much, multus, a, um; (adv.) multum; *much less* (conj.), nedum.
mad, limus, i, m.
multitude, multitudo, inis, f.
munificence, munificentia, ae, f.
murder, caedes, is, f.
murder, to, caedo, cecidi, caesum, 3; interficio, feci, fectum, 3; trucidio, l.
murderer, interfector, oris, m.
murmur, murmur, uris, n.
murmur, i.e. to complain, queror, questus, 3.
my, meus, a, um.

N.

naked, nudus, a, um.
name, to, nomino, 1; voco, 1.
name, a, nomen, inis, n.
narrate, narro, 1; refero, retuli, relatum, referre.
narrow, angustus, a, um.
nation, natio, onis, f.; populus, i, m.
national, patrius, a, um.
native, natalis, e.
nature, natura, ae, f.
naval, navalis, e.
navigation, navigatio, onis, f.
hear, propinquus, a, um; (prep.) prope (c. acc.).
necessary, necessarius, a, um.
necessity, necessitas, atis, f.
need, opus, n.
neglect, to, negligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
neighbouring, vicinus, a, um; finitimus, a, um.
neither, neuter, tra, trum; (conj.) nec; neque.
nephew, nepos, otis, m.

nest, nidus, i, m.
 net, rete, is, n.
 never, nunquam.
 nevertheless, tamen.
 new, novus, a, um.
 news, *quid novi*.
 next, proximus, a, um.
 niggardly, parcus, a, um.
 night, nox, noctis, f.
 nightingale, philomela, ae, f.
 nitre, nitrum, i, n.
 nobility, nobilitas, atis, f.
 noble, nobilis, e. *See illustrious*.
 noble, a, nobilis, is, m.; princeps, cipis, m.
 noise, sonus, i, m.; clamor, oris, m.
 noise abroad, to, vulgo, l.
 nominate, designo, l; nomino, l.
 none, nullus, a, um; *no one*, nemo, acc. *neminem*.
 not, non; *not even*, ne
 quidem.
 noted, notus, a, um.
 nothing, nihil or nil, incl.
 notorious, notus, a, um.
 notwithstanding, tamen; *nihilominus*.
 novelty, novitas, atis, f.
 now, nunc; jam.
 number, numerus, i, m.
 nurse, to, foveo, fovi, fotum, 2.

O.

oak, quercus, us, f.
 oath, sacramentum, i, n.
 obedience, obsequium, i, n.
 obese, obesus, a, um.
 obey, pareo, ui, itum, 2 (c. dat.);
 obedio, ii or ivi, itum, 4 (c. dat.).
 oblong, oblongus, a, um.
 obscurely, obscure.
 observe, observo, l.
 obsolete, to be, obsolesco, levi,
 letum, 3.
 obstinacy, pertinacia, ae, f.
 obstinate, pertinax, acis.
 obstruct, impedio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 obtain, acquiro, quisivi, situm, 3;
 potior, itus, 4 (c. abl.); *by en-*
 treaty, impetro, l.
 occasion, occasio, onis, f.

occupy, occupo, l.
 ocean, oceanus, i, m.
 odour, odor, oris, m.
 offend, offendo, di, sum, 3.
 offer, offero, obtuli, oblatum, offerre;
 do, dedi, datum, l.
 offering, donum, i, n.
 often, saepe; *how often*, quoties.
 old, senex, senis; vetus, eris.
 old age, senectus, utis, f.
 omen, omen, inis, n.; *ill-omened*,
 ominosus, a, um.
 omit, omitto, misi, missum, 3.
 on, i. e. *upon*, in (c. abl.); *concern-*
 ing, de (c. abl.).
 once, semel; *formerly*, olim; *quon-*
 dam; *at once*, simul.
 one, unus, a, um.
 only, solus, a, um; (adv.) solum.
 onset, impetus, us, m.
 open, to, aperio, ui, pertum, 4;
 to be open, pateo, ui, 2.
 open, apertus, a, um.
 opinion, sententia, ae, f.; arbitrium,
 i, n.
 opportunity, occasio, onis, f.;
 opportunitas, atis, f.
 oppose, obsisto, stiti, stitum, 3 (c.
 dat.). *See resist*.
 oppress, premo, pressi, pressum, 3.
 opulent, opulentus, a, um; locuples,
 etis.
 or, aut; vel; *ve* (enclitic); *whether* . . .
 or, sive . . . sive.
 orator, orator, oris, m.
 oratory, eloquentia, ae, f.
 order, to, jubeo, jussi, jussum, 2;
 impero, l (c. dat.).
 order, an, mandatum, i, n.
 orderly, quietus, a, um.
 ostentation, ostentatio, onis, f.
 other, alius, a, ud.
 ought, debeo, ui, itum, 2.
 our, noster, tra, trum.
 out of, e or ex, (c. abl.).
 outrage, injuria, ae, f.
 outstrip, praevenio, veni, ventum, 4.
 out-work, propugnaculum, i, n.
 over, super (c. abl.); *across*, trans
 (c. acc.).
 overcome, supero, l; vinco, vici,
 victum, 3.

overflow, inundo, 1 (trans.).
 overlook, prospicio, spero, spectrum,
 3; *neglect*, negligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
 overthrow. *See* overcome.
 overturn, subverto, verti, versum,
 3.
 owe, debeo, ui, itum, 2.
 ox, bos, bovis, m.

P.

pace, a, passus, us, m.
 pacify, paco, 1.
 paint, pingo, nxi, pictum, 3.
 painter, pictor, oris, m.
 painting, pictura, ae, f.
 palace, palatium, i, n.
 pamphlet, libellus, i, m.
 panic, pavor, oris, m. *See* fear.
 pant, anhelus, 1.
 parched, aridus, a, um; exustus, a, um.
 pardon, to, ignosco, novi, notum, 3 (c. dat. of person).
 pardon, venia, ae, f.
 parent, parens, tis, c.
 parole, fides, ei, f.
 parricide, parricida, ae, m.
 part, pars, tis, f.; *I for my part*, equidem.
 particular, proprius, a, um.
 party, pars, tis, f. (generally in pl.)
 pass, praetereo, ivi or ii, itum, 4; *a law*, fero, tuli, latum, ferre.
 pass (under the yoke), mitto, misi, missum, 3 (trans.).
 past, the, praeteritum, i, n.
 pasture, pastus, us, m.
 patron, patronus, i, m.
 pay, to, solvo, vi, solutum, 3; *pen-sito*, 1.
 peace, pax, pacis, f.
 peculiarity, proprium, i, n.
 peevishness, petulantia, ae, f.
 penalty, poena, ae, f.
 penetrate, petro, 1.
 penitence, poenitentia, ae, f.
 penny, denarius, i, m.
 people, a, populus, i, m.
 perceive, percipio, cepi, ceptum, 3; cerno, crevi, cretum, 3.
 perform, perficio, feci, factum, 3; fungor, functus, 3 (c. abl.).
 peril, periculum, i, n.
 perish, pereo, ivi or ii, 4.
 permission, permissio, onis, f.; licentia, ae, f.
 permit, sino, sivi, situm, 3.
 perseverance, perseverantia, ae, f.
 persevere, persevero, 1.
 persistently, assidue.
 person, homo, inis, c.; *appearance*, species, ei, f.
 persuade, persuadeo, suasi, suasum, 2 (c. dat. of person).
 pervade, pervado, vasi, vasum, 3.
 petulance, petulantia, ae, f.
 philosopher, philosophus, i, m.
 philosophy, philosophia, ae, f.
 picture, tabula, ae, f.
 pile, i. e. *building*, moles, is, f.
 pilot, rector, oris, m.
 pious, pius, a, um.
 pirate, praedo, onis, m.
 pitch (a camp), pono, posui, positum, 3.
 pitiful, misericors, cordis.
 pity, misericordia, ae, f.
 pity, to, misereor, scribitur or sertus, 2 (c. gen.).
 place, locus, i, m., pl. loci or loca.
 place, to, pono, posui, positum, 3.
 plain, campus, i, m.
 plan, consilium, i, n.; ratio, onis, f.
 plant, planta, ae, f.
 plant, to. *See* place.
 play, to, ludo, si, sum, 3.
 play the madman, furo, ui, 3.
 play, ludus, i, m.; *a play*, fabula, ae, f.
 pleasant, gratus, a, um; jucundus, a, um.
 please, placeo, ui, itum, 2 (c. dat.).
 pleasure, voluptas, atis, f.
 plot, consilium, i, n.; conjuratio, onis, f.
 plough, to, aro, 1.
 ploughshare, vomer, eris, m.
 plunder, praedo, ae, f.
 plunder, to, rapio, ui, ptum, 3; praedor, 1.
 plunderer, raptor, oris, m.; praedator, oris, m.

- poet, poeta, ae, m.
 point, to, acuo, ui, utum, 3.
 point-out, ostendo, di, nsum, 3;
 monstro, 1.
 poison, venenum, i, n.
 pomp, pompa, ae, f.
 poor, pauper, eris.
 populace, vulgus, i, n. rarely m.
 populous, frequens, tia.
 porch, porticus, us, f.
 port, portus, us, m.
 portion, pars, tis, f.
 position. *See* place.
 possess, habeo, ui, itum, 2; pos-
 sideo, sedi, sessum, 2.
 possession, possessio, onis, f.
 possession, to take, occupo, 1.
 posterity, posteritas, atis, f.
 pound, libra, ae, f.
 pour, fundo, fudi, fustum, 3.
 poverty, paupertas, atis, f.
 power, potestas, atis, f.; *in the*
power of, penes (c. acc.).
 powerful, potens, tis.
 practise, colo, ui, cultum, 3.
 praetor, praetor, oris, m.
 praise, laus, laudis, f.
 praise, to, laudo, 1.
 pray, prece, 1; oro, 1.
 prayers, preces, um, f., abl. sing.
 prece.
 precedent, exemplum, i, n.
 precept, praeceptum, i, n.
 precious, pretiosus, a, um.
 prefer, malo, ui, malle; antepono,
 posui, positum, 3.
 preferable, melior, us.
 prepare, paro, 1.
 presence, *in presence of*, coram (c.
 abl.).
 present, to be, adsum, fui, esse.
 present, a, donum, i, n.; munus,
 eris, n.
 presently, mox.
 preserve, servo, 1; tueor, uitus,
 2.
 press (on an enemy), insto, stiti,
 stitum, 1; *to urge*, urgeo, ursi,
 sum, 2.
 pressure, impulsus, us, m.
 pretend, simulo, 1.
 pretender, simulator, oris, m.
 prevail, valeo, ui, 2; *to prevail on*,
 exoro, 1.
 prevent, prohibeo, ui, itum, 2;
 impedio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 previously, ante.
 prey, praeda, ae, f.
 price, pretium, i, n.
 pride, superbia, ae, f.
 priest, sacerdos, otis, m.
 prince, princeps, cipis, m.
 prior, prior, us.
 prison, carcer, eris, m.
 prisoner (of war), captivus, i, m.
 private, privatus, a, um.
 prize, praemium, i, n.
 probity, probitas, atis, f.
 proceed, progredior, gressus, 3.
 proclaim, pronuntio, 1; edico, dixi,
 dictum, 3.
 pro-consul, pro-consul, ulis, m.
 pro-consular, pro-consularis, e.
 procure, paro, 1. *See* gain.
 prodigal, profusus, a, um; pro-
 digus, a, um.
 prodigy, prodigium, i, n.
 produce, pario, peperit, partum, 3.
 productiveness, ubertas, atis, f.
 profane, profanus, a, um.
 proficiency, peritia, ae, f.
 profit, fructus, us, m.; quaestus,
 us, m.
 profuse, profusus, a, um; prodigus,
 a, um.
 prohibit, prohibeo, ui, itum, 2;
 veto, ui, itum, 1.
 prolong, produco, duxi, ductum, 3.
 promise, to, polliceor, itus, 2.
 promise, i.e. *expected excellence*,
 spes, spei, f.
 promptitude, celeritas, atis, f.
 prone, pronus, a, um.
 property, res, ei, f.; bona, orum, n.
 prophesy, praedico, dixi, dictum, 3.
 prophetic, praescius, a, um.
 propitious, propitius, a, um.
 propose, propono, posui, positum,
 3; *to propose a law*, rogo, 1.
 prosperity, *res secundae*.
 prosperous, secundus, a, um; felix,
 icis.
 protect, protego, texi, tectum, 3;
 tueor, uitus, 2.

protection, praesidium, i, n.
protract, traho, traxi, ctum, 3.

See prolong.

proud, superbus, a, um.

prove, demonstro, 1.

provide, provideo, vidi, visum, 2.

provided that, dum; modo (both c. subjunctive).

province, provincia, ae, f.

provisions, annona, ae, f.; *supplies*

for an army, commeatus, us, m.

provoke, provoco, 1.

prudence, consilium, i, n.

prudent, prudens, tis.

public, publicus, a, um.

punish, punio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.

punishment, poena, ae, f.; *suppl-*
cium, i, n.

pure, purus, a, um.

pursue, sequor, secutus, 3.

pursuit, i. e. *occupation*, studium.

push-on, trudo, si, sum, 3.

put. *See* place. *Put up with*, tolero, 1.

put-off, defero, tuli, latum, 3.

pyre, rogos, i, m.

Q.

qualities, good, virtutes, um, f.

quantity, copia, ae, f.

quarrel, to, contendo, di, nsum, 3.

quarrel, contentio, onis, f.

quarters, winter, hiberna, orum, n.

queen, regina, ae, f.

quickly, celeriter.

quickness, celeritas, atis, f.

quiet, tranquillus, a, um; quietus,
a, um.

R.

race, cursus, us, m.; *family*, genus,
eris, n.

rage, furor, oris, m.; ira, ae, f.

rage, to, saevio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.

raid, incursio, onis, f.

rain, pluvia, ae, f.

raise, tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3;
erigo, rexi, rectum, 3.

rally, colligo, legi, lectum, 3 (trans.).

rampart, vallum, i, n.

rank, ordo, inis, m.; *a high rank*,
dignitas, atis, f.; *line of battle*,
acies, ei, f.

rapacious, rapax, acis.

rapid, rapidus, a, um; celer, is, a.

rapidity, celeritas, atis, f.

rapine, rapina, ae, f.

rare, rarus, a, um.

rascal, scelestus, a, um.

rash, praeceps, cipitis.

rashly, temere.

rather, potius; *wish rather*, malo
ui, malle, 3.

ravage, vasto, 1; rapio, ui, ptum, 3.

ravager, raptor, oris, m.; vastator,
oris, m.

rave, furo, ui, 3.

reach, i. e. *arrive at*, attingo, tigi,
tactum, 3; *a place*, pervenio,
veni, ventum, 4.

read, lego, legi, lectum, 3.

readily, libenter.

ready, promptus, a, um; paratus,
a, um.

real, verus, a, um.

reality, in, re; re ipsa.

reap, meto, messui, messum, 3.

reason, reasoning, ratio, onis, f.;
cause, causa, ae, f.; *by reason of*,
ob (c. acc.); propter (c. acc.).

recall, revoco, 1.

receive, accipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.

recent, recens, tis; novus, a, um.

recently, nuper.

receptacle, receptaculum, i, n.

recite, narro, 1; recito, 1.

reckon, numero, 1.

recognize, cognosco, novi, nitum, 3.

recognition, cognitio, onis, f.

recollection, memoria, ae, f.; re-
cordatio, onis, f.

record. *See* recollection.

recover, recuperio, 1.

recount, narro, 1.

refresh, recreo, 1.

refuge, refugium, i, n.

refuse, recuso, 1.

refute, refuto, 1.

regard, aspicio, spexi, spectrum, 3;
estimate, aestimo, 1; fecio, feci,
factum, 3.

regardless, negligens, tis.

region, regio, onis, f.
 regret, to, desidero, i, n.
 regret, desiderium, i, n.
 reign, to, regno, i; *reign over*, impero, i (c. dat.).
 reign, regnum, i, n.
 rein, habena, ae, f.
 reinforcement, subsidium, i, n.
 reject, rejicio, jeci, jectum, 3; repudio, i.
 rejoice, gaudeo, gavisus sum, 2.
 relate, referro, retuli, relatum, ferre; narro, i.
 relative, propinquus, i; cognatus, i.
 reliance, fiducia, ae, f.; spes, ei, f.
 relieve, levo, i.
 religion, religio, onis, f.
 religious, religiosus, a, um; sanctus, a, um.
 relying, fretus, a, um.
 remain, maneo, nsi, nsum, 2.
 remarkable, insignis, e.
 remedy, remedium, i, n.
 remember, meminisse, def.
 remembrance, memoria, ae, f.
 remove, amoveo, movi, motum, 2.
 renew, renovo, i.
 renown, fama, ae, f.
 renowned, clarus, a, um; inclytus, a, um.
 repair, reficio, feci, fectum, 3; reparo, i.
 repel, pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3.
 repentance, poenitentia, ae, f.
 report, fama, ae, f.; rumor, oris, m.
 report, to, nuntio, i; fero, tuli, latum, ferre.
 represent, fingo, nxi, ctum, 3.
 repress, reprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.
 republic, respublica, reipublicae, f.
 repulse, pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3.
 reputation, fama, ae, f.
 resist, resisto, stiti, stitum, 3 (c. dat.).
 resound, resono, i.
 resources, opes, um, f.
 respect, observantia, ae, f.
 respectfully, verecunde.
 response, responsum, i, n.
 rest, quies, etis, f.; otium, i, n.
 rest, the, reliquus, a, um.
 rest, to, quiesco, quievi, etum, 3.

restore, reddo, didi, ditum, 3.
 restrain, cohibeo, ui, itum, 2; coerceo, ui, citum, 2.
 restraint, frenum, i, n., pl. freni or a.
 result, eventus, us, m.
 retain, i. e. preserve, servo, i.
 retinue, comitatus, us, m.
 retire, discedo, cessi, cessum, 3; recipere se.
 retirement, otium, i, n.
 retreat, to, cedo, cessi, cessum, 3; recipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.
 retreat, receptus, us, m.
 return, to, redeo, ivi or ii, itum, 4
give back, reddo, didi, ditum, 3.
 return, reditus, us, m.; *gain*, fructus, us, m.
 reveal, patefacio, feci, factum, 3.
 revel, commissatio, onis, f.
 revenge, to, ulciscor, ultus, 3.
 revenge, ultio, onis, f.
 revenue, vectigal, alia, n.
 revere, veneror, i.
 reverence, veneratio, onis, f.
 reverent, reverens, tis.
 reverse (a law), abrogo, i.
 revolve, volvo, volutus, 3.
 reward, praemium, i, n.; merces, edis, f.
 rich, dives, vitis; opulentus, a, um.
 riches, divitiae, arum, f.; opes, um, f.
 ride, equito, i.
 rider, eques, itis, m.
 ridiculous, ridiculus, a, um.
 right, i. e. just, rectus, a, um; probus, a, um.
 right, jus, juris, n.; fas, indcl.
 right-hand, dexter, tra, trum; *the right hand*, dextera or dextra, ae, f.
 ripen, matureasco, rui, 3.
 rise, surgo, surrexi, rectum, 3; orior, ortus, 4; *of the sun*, orior; *sun-rise*, (solis) ortus, us, m.
 risk, periculum, i, n.
 rite, ritus, us, m.; sacram, i, n.; *funeral rites*, exsequiae, arum, f.
 rivalry, aemulatio, onis, f.
 river, fluvius, i, m.; amnis, is, m.; flumen, inis, n.
 road, via, ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
 rob, rapio, ui, ptum, 3; spolio, i.

robber, latro, onis, m.
 rock, scopulus, i, m.; rupe, is, f.
 roll, volvo, vi, volutum, 3 (trans.);
 (intrans.) volvor.
 roof, tectum, i, n.; ceiling, lacunar,
 aris, n.
 room, i. e. space, spatium, i, n.;
 locus, i, m.
 root, stirps, pis, f.; radix, icis, f.
 rope, funis, is, m.
 rose, rosa, ae, f.
 rough, asper, era, erum.
 round, rotundus, a, um; teres, etis.
 round (prep.), circum (c. acc.).
 rouse, excito, i.
 rout, fugo, i; fundo, fudi, fustum, 3.
 royal, regalis, e.
 rude, rudis, e; incultus, a, um.
 ruin, ruina, ae, f.; destruction, exi-
 tium, i, n.
 ruin, to, perdo, didi, ditum, 3; *I*
am ruined, perii.
 rule, rego, xi, ctum, 3; impero, 1
 (c. dat.).
 rumour, rumor, oris, m.; fama, ae, f.
 run, curro, cucurri, cursum, 3;
run away, fugio, fugi, itum, 3;
 aufugio.
 rush, ruo, ui, utum, 3; *rush-forth*,
 erumpo, rupi, ruptum, 3.
 ruthless, immitis, e.

S.

sacred, sacer, era, crum.
 sacrifice, to, sacrifico, i.
 sad, tristis, e; maestus, a, um.
 safe, tutus, a, um; incolumis, e.
 safety, salus, utis, f.
 saffron (adj.), croceus, a, um.
 sagacious, sagax, acis.
 sailor, nauta, ae, m.
 sake, *for the sake*, causâ.
 salary, salarium, i, n.
 salt, sal, salis, n.
 salutary, salutaris, e; utilis, e.
 salutation, salitatio, onis, f.
 salute, saluto, i.
 same, idem, eadem, idem.
 sand, arena, ae, f.
 sandal, calceus, i, m.

sate, satiate, expleo, plevi, pletum,
 2.
 satisfy, satisfacio, feci, factum, 3
 (c. dat.).
 savage, ferus, a, um; saevus, a, um.
 savageness, savagery, saevitia,
 ae, f.
 save, servo, i.
 say, dico, xi, ctum, 3; loquor, lo-
 cutus, 3.
 saying, dictum, i, n.
 scanty, exiguus, a, um; tenuis, e.
 scarcely, vix.
 scarcity, inopia, ae, f.
 scare. *See* frighten.
 scatter, spargo, rsi, rsum, 3; fundo,
 fudi, sum, 3.
 science, scientia, ae, f.
 scorch, aduro, ussi, ustum, 3.
 scorn, temno, mpsi, mptum, 3.
 scoundrel, sceleratus, i, m.; nequam,
 indol.
 scout, explorator, oris, m.
 sculpture, sculptura, ae, f.
 sculpture, to, sculpo, psi, ptum, 3.
 sea, mare, is, n.; pontus, i, m.
 search, exploro, i; *search out*,
 quaero, sivi, situm, 3; exquiro.
 season, tempus, oris, n.; tempestas,
 atis, f.
 seasonable, opportunus, a, um.
 seasonableness, opportunitas, atis,
 f.
 seat, sedes, is, f.
 secret, secretus, a, um; arcanus, a,
 um.
 secure, securus, a, um. *See* safe.
 security. *See* safety.
 sedition, seditio, onis, f.
 see, video, vidi, visum, 3; cerno,
 [crevi], cretum, 3; spectro, i.
 seed, semen, inis, n.
 seek, quaero, sivi, situm, 3; peto,
 ivi, itum, 3.
 seem, videor, visus, 2.
 seemly, decorus, a, um.
 seize, occupo, i; rapio, ui, ptum, 3.
 seldom, raro.
 select, lego, legi, ctum, 3.
 self, ipse, a, um.
 sell, vendo, didi, ditum, 3.
 senate, senatus, us, m.

senate-house, curia, ae, f.
 senator, senator, oris, m.
 senatorial, senatorius, a, um.
 send, mitto, misi, missum, 3.
 sentinel, vigil, ilia, m.; *a guard of soldiers*, vigiliae, arum, f.
 separate, separo, 1; sejungo, nxi, nctum, 3.
 serious, gravis, a.
 serpent, serpens, tis, c.
 servant, servus, i, m.; famulus, i, m.; *maid-servant*, ancilla, ae, f.
 serve, servio, ivi or ii, itum, 4 (c. dat.).
 service, servitium, i, n.; obsequium, i, n.; *military service*, militia, ae, f.
 servile, servilis, e.
 servitude, servitium, i, n.
 sestertius, sestertius, i, m.; *a thousand sestertius*, sestertium, i, n.
 set-out, proficiscor, fectus, 3.
 settle, i. e. *arrange*, compono, posui, positum; *decide*, statuo, ui, utum, 3; constituo.
 settle, i. e. *alight*; sedeo, sedi, sessum, 2.
 seven, septem, indcl.
 seventy, septuaginta, indcl.
 several, plures, um.
 severe, severus, a, um; acer, cris, e.
 severity, severitas, atis, f.
 shade, shadow, umbra, ae, f.
 shady, umbrosus, a, um.
 shame, pudor, oris, m.
 shameful, turpis, e; probosus, a, um.
 shameless, impudens, tis.
 shamelessness, impudentia, ae, f.
 shape, forma, ae, f.
 share, pars, tis, f.
 share, to, divido, visi, sum, 3.
 sharpen, acuo, ui, utum, 3.
 shatter, disicio, jeci, jectum, 3.
See break.
 she. *See he.*
 shed, fundo, fudi, fustum, 3; effundo.
 sheep, ovis, is, c.
 shepherd, pastor, oris, m.
 shield, scutum, i, n.; parma, ae, f.
 shield, to, tego, xi, ctum, 3; protego. *See defend.*

shine, luceo, xi, 2; niteo, ui, 2.
 ship, navis, is, f.
 shirk, detrecto, 1; vito, 1.
 shock, impetus, na, m.
 shore, ora, ae, f.; litus, oris, n.
 short, short-lived, brevis, e.
 shoulder, humerus, i, m.
 shout, clamor, oris, m.
 shout, to, clamo, 1.
 show, ostendo, di, usum, 3; monstro, 1; praebeo, ui, itum, 2.
 show, i. e. *appearance*, species, ei, f.
 shower, imber, bris, m.
 shrine, adytum, i, n.; delubrum, i, n.
 shrink-from, detrecto 1.
 shrub, arbustum, i, n.
 shun, fugio, fugi, itum, 3; vito, 1.
 shut, claudio, si, sum, 3.
 sick, sickly, aeger, gra, grum; infirmus, a, um.
 side, on this, citra (c. acc.); on all sides, undique.
 sight, conspectus, us, m.; visus, us, m.
 sign, signum, i, n.; indicium, i, n.
 silence, silentium, i, n.
 silent, tacitus, a, um; silens, tis.
 silent, to be, taceo, ui, itum, 2; sileo, ui, 2.
 silver, argentum, i, n.
 simple, simplex, icia.
 sin, to, pecco, 1.
 sin, a, peccatum, i, n.; scelus, eris, n.
 since, quum; quoniam.
 since. *See after.*
 sincere, sincerus, a, um.
 sing, cano, cecini, cantum, 3; canto, 1.
 single, unus, a, um.
 singular, singularis, e; egregius, a, um.
 sink, mergo, rsi, rsum, 3 (trans.); (intrans.) mergor.
 sink, a, sentina, ae, f.
 sister, soror, oris, f.
 sit, sedeo, di, ssum, 2.
 situated, situs, a, um.
 six, sex, indcl.
 size, magnitudo, inis, f.
 skilful, peritus, a, um; doctus, um.
 skill, peritia, ae, f.
 sky, caelum, i, n.

- slander**, maledictum, i, n.
slaughter, caedes, is, f.; strages, is, f.
slave, servus, i, m.
slavery, servitium, i, n.
slay, occido, di, sum, 3; interficio, feci, fectum, 3.
sleep, sleepiness, somnus, i, m.
sleep, to, dormio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
slender, slight, tenuis, e; exiguus, a, um; *graceful*, gracilis, e.
sloth, scordia, ae, f.; desidia, ae, f.
slow, tardus, a, um.
sluggard, ignavus, a, um.
small, parvus, a, um. *See slender*.
smear, illino, lini and levi, litum, 3.
smite, percutio, cussi, cussum, 3.
snake, anguis, is, c.
snare, insidiae, arum, f.
snatch, rapio, ui, ptum, 3.
snow, nix, nivis, f.
so, ita; sic.
soil, solum, i, n.; humus, i, f.
soldier, miles, itis, m.
solemn, solennis, e.
some, quidam, quaedam, quoddam; nonnullus, a, um.
sometimes, interdum; aliquando.
son, filius, i, m.
song, carmen, inis, n.; cantus, us, m.
soon, mox; *as soon as*, simul ac; ut primum.
sooner, i. e. *more quickly*, citius; *rather*, potius.
soothsayer, harusper, icis, m.
sorrow, dolor, oris, m.; maeror, oris, m.; luctus, us, m.
sorrowful. *See mournful*; sad.
sort, genus, eris, n.
soul, animus, i, m.
sound, sonus, i, m. *See noise*.
sovereignty, imperium, i, n.
sow, to, sero, sevi, satum, 3.
space, spatium, i, n.; *space between*, intervallum, i, n.
spacious, spatiosus, a, um.
spare, parco, peperci, parsum, 3 (c. dat.).
sparing, i. e. *niggardly*, parcus, a, um.
speak, loquor, locutus, 3; dico, xi, ctum, 3.
spear, hasta, ae, f.
spectacle, spectaculum, i, n.
speech, a, oratio, onis, f.
speed, celeritas, atis, f.
spend (time), ago, egi, actum, 3.
spirit, spiritus, us, m.; *courage*, animus, i, m.
splendid, splendidus, a, um.
splendor, claritas, atis, f.; splendor, oris, m.
spoil. *See plunder*.
spontaneously, ultro; sponte.
sport, ludus, i, m.
spot, i. e. *place*, locus, i, m.; *on the spot*, illico.
spring, to, i. e. *rise*, orior, ortus, 4; *be born*, nascor, natus, 3.
spring, ver, veris, n.
spy, explorator, oris, m.
squander, dissipo, 1.
stand, sto, steti, statum, 1.
standard, signum, i, n.
star, sidus, eris, n.; stella, ae, f.
state, the, respublica, reipublicae, f.; civitas, atis, f.
state, i. e. *condition*, conditio, onis, f.
station, to, loco, 1.
statue, statua, ae, f.; imago, inis, f.
stature, statura, ae, f.
stay, maneo, nsi, nsum, 2; moror, 1.
steal, furor, 1; rapio, ui, ptum, 3.
steel, ferrum, i, n.
stern, severus, a, um; tervus, a, um.
sternness, severitas, atis, f.
steward, villicus, i, m.
still, tranquillus, a, um.
still, i. e. *yet*, adhuc.
stir, to, (trans.) moveo, movi, motum, 2; commoveo.
stir, a, motus, us, m.
stone, lapis, idis, m.; saxum, i, n.
stop, sisto, stiti, stitum, 3; impedio, ivi or ii, itum, 4 (both trans.).
store, thesaurus, i, m.; copia, ae, f.
storm, procella, ae, f.; tempestas, atis, f.
story, fabula, ae, f.
straight, rectus, a, um.
strange, insolitus, a, um; mirus, a, um.
stranger, hospes, itis, c.; peregrinus, i, m.

strangle, strangulo, 1.
 strategy, consilium, i, n.
 stream, flumen, inis, n.
 strength, vires, ium, f.
 strengthen, firmo, 1.
 strew, sterno, stravi, stratum, 3.
 strive, nitor, nisus or nixus, 3;
 contendo, di, nsum, 3; certo, 1.
 strong, validus, a, um; fortis, e.
 struggle, a, contentio, onis, f.
 study, to. *See* learn; strive.
 study, studium, i, n.
 stupid, stultus, a, um; stolidus, a,
 um.
 subdue, subjugate, subigo, egi,
 actum, 3. *See* conquer.
 subject, i. e. *matter*, res, ei, f.; *as*
 opposed to a prince, privatus, i,
 m.
 submerge, mergo, si, sum, 3.
 subtle, subtilis, e; callidus, a,
 um.
 succeed (to a person), succedo,
 cessi, cessum, 3.
 success, victoria, ae, f.
 succour, auxilium, i, n.
 succour, to, succurro, i, 3 (c. dat.);
 subvenio, veni, ventum, 4 (c. dat.).
 succumb, succumbo, cubui, cubi-
 tum, 3.
 such, talis, e.
 sudden, repentinus, a, um; subitus,
 a, um.
 suddenly, subito; repente.
 suffer, patior, passus, 3.
 sufficient, satis, incl.; idoneus, a,
 um.
 sufficiently, satis.
 sum (of money), pecunia, ae, f.
 summer, aetas, atis, f.
 sun, sol, solis, m.
 sunrise, lux, lucis, f.; *solis ortus*.
 sunset, *solis occasus*.
 sup, coeno, 1.
 superstition, superstitio, onis, f.
 supper, coena, ae, f.
 suppliant, supplex, icis.
 supplies, commeatu, us, m.
 support, to, sustineo, ui, tentum, 2.
 suppose, puto, 1; *suppose* (impe-
 rative), fac.
 supremacy, dominatio, onis, f.

supreme, supremus, a, um; *supreme*
 power, imperium, i, n.
 sure, certus, a, um.
 surpass, supero, 1; antecello, ui, 3
 (c. dat.).
 surpassing, egregius, a, um.
 surrender, dedo, idi, itum, 3 (trans.).
 surround, circumdo, dedi, datum,
 1; cingo, nxi, nctum, 8.
 survive, supersum, fui, esse.
 suspicion, suspicio, onis, f.
 swamp, palus, udia, f.
 swan, cygnus, i, m.
 swear, juro, 1.
 sweet, dulcis, e; suavis, e.
 swim, no, 1; nato, 1.
 sword, gladius, i, m.
 sympathy, consensus, us, m.; *pity*,
 misericordia, ae, f.
 system, ratio, onis, f.

T.

table, mensa, ae, f.
 tablet, tabula, ae, f.
 tactics, military, *ars militaris*;
 res militares.
 taint, to, inficio, feci, factum, 3.
 take, capio, cepi, captum, 3; accipio;
 to take by storm, expugno, 1; *to*
 take up, suscipio; *take in hand*,
 suscipio; *take place*, *see* hap-
 pen.
 take away, tollo, sustuli, sublatum,
 3; demo, mpsi, mptum, 3.
 talent, ingenium, i, n.
 talk, loquor, locutus, 3.
 talkative, garrulus, a, um.
 tall, procerus, a, um.
 tamarisk, marica, ae, f.
 tardy, serus, a, um; tardus, a, um.
 tares, lolia, orum, n.
 target, pelta, ae, f.
 tarry, moror, 1; cunctor, 1.
 tax, tributum, i, n.; vectigal, alis,
 n.
 teach, doceo, ui, ctum, 2.
 teacher, doctor, oris, m.
 tear, lacryma, ae, f.
 tear in pieces, to, dilanio, 1.

- tell, dico, xi, etum, 3; nuntio, 1;
sarrate, memoro, 1.
 temerity, temeritas, atis, f.
 temper, animus, i, m.
 temperate, modicus, a, um; mode-
 ratus, a, um.
 tempest, tempestas, atis, f.; procella,
 ae, f.
 temple, templum, i, n.; aedes, is, f.
 ten, decem, incl.
 tent, tabernaculum, i, n.
 term, to, voco, 1.
 terrible, dirus, a, um; terribilis, e.
 terrify, terreo, ui, itum, 2.
 territory, fines, ium, f.
 terror, terror, oris, m.
 than, quam.
 that, ille, a, ud; is, ea, id; iste, a, ud.
 that (conj.), ut (c. subj.).
 theft, furtum, i, n.
 their, suus, a, um; eorum, earum,
 eorum.
 then, tunc; deinde.
 thence, inde.
 there, illic; ibi.
 therefore, igitur; ergo.
 thick, crassus, a, um.
 thicket, dumetum, i, n.
 thief, fur, furis, c.
 thing, res, ei, f.
 think, puto, 1; censeo, ui, 2; *to me-*
ditate, cogito, 1.
 third, tertius, a, um.
 thirst, sitis, is, f.
 this, hic, haec, hoc.
 thither, illuc; eo.
 thou, tu, tui.
 though, quamvis; quanquam; etsi.
 thought, cogitatio, onis, f.
 thousand, mille, incl. in sing., pl.
 millia, um.
 threaten, minor, 1 (c. dat. of
 person).
 threatening, minax, acis.
 three, tres, ia.
 thrift, frugalitas, atis, f.
 thrifty, parcus, a, um.
 throne, solium, i, n.
 throng, turba, ae, f.
 throw, jacio, jeci, jectum, 3; *throw*
open, patefacio, feci, factum, 3;
throw aside, abjicio.
- thunder, tonitrus, only in gen.
 and abl. sing., pl. tonitrus or ua,
 um.
 thunder, to, tono, ui, itum, 1.
 thus, sic; ita.
 thy, tuus, a, um.
 tide, aestus, us, m.
 till, donec; dum.
 till, to, colo, ui, cultum, .
 time, tempus, oris, n.
 timely, opportunus, a, um.
 timid, timidus, a, um.
 to, ad (c. acc.).
 to-day, hodie.
 together, simul; una.
 toil, labor, oris, m.
 token, indicium, i, n.
 tolerant, patiens, tis.
 tolerate, patior, passus, 3; tolero, 1.
 toll, vectigal, alis, n.
 tomb, tumulus, i, m.
 to-morrow, cras.
 tongue, lingua, ae, f.
 too, too much, nimis; nimium.
 tooth, dens, tis, m.
 torch, fax, facis, f.; taeda, ae, f.
 torpid, to be, torpeo, ui, 2.
 torturer, tortor, oris, m.
 touch, tango, tetigi, tactum, 3.
 towards, versus (c. acc.); ad (c. acc.).
 tower, turris, is, f.
 town, oppidum, i, n.; urbs, bis, f.
 townsman, oppidanus, i, m.
 trace, vestigium, i, n.
 tract, tractus, us, m.
 traitor, proditor, oris, m.
 tranquil, tranquillus, a, um.
 tranquillity, tranquillitas, atis, f.
 transact, ago, egi, actum, 3.
 transcribe, exscribo, psi, ptum, 3.
 transfer, transport, transfero,
 tuli, latum, ferre.
 treacherous, perfidus, a, um.
 treachery, perfidia, ae, f.
 tread on, conculco, 1.
 treason, proditio, onis, f.
 treasure, gaza, ae, f.; thesaurus, i,
 m.
 treasury, aerarium, i, n.
 treat, i.e. *negotiate*, ago, egi, actum,
 3.
 treatise, liber, bri, m.

treaty, foedus, eris, n.
 tree, arbor, oris, f.
 tremble, tremo, ui, 3.
 trembling, trepidus, a, um.
 tribe, tribus, us, f.
 tribunal, tribunal, alis, n.
 tribune, tribunus, i, m.
 tribuneship, tribunatus, us, m.
 tribute, tributum, i, n.
 triumph, triumphus, i, m.
 triumph, to, triumpho, l.
 troop (of cavalry), turma, ae, f.;
 troops, copiae, arum, f.
 trophy, tropaeum, i, n.
 trouble, sollicitudo, inis, f.
 trouble, to, turbo, l.
 troublesome, molestus, a, um.
 truce, induciae, arum, f.
 true, verus, a, um.
 truly, vere.
 trumpet, tuba, ae, f.; lituus, i, m.
 trumpeter, tubicen, inis, m.
 trust, fides, ei, f.
 trust, credo, idi, itum, 3 (c. acc. or
 dat.); fido, di and sisus sum, 3 (c.
 dat. or abl.); confido.
 truth, veritas, atis, f.; verum, i, n.
 try, superior, rtus, 4; *endeavour*,
 conor, l.
 tumult, tumultus, us, m.
 turn, verito, ti, sum, 3; *turn out*,
 evenio, veni, ntum, 4; *turn over*
 (*in one's mind*), agito, l.
 turn, in, invicem.
 twelve, duodecim, indel.
 twice, bis.
 twig, virga, ae, f.
 twist, torqueo, ai, tum, 2.
 two, duo, ae, o.
 two-edged, bipennis, e.
 tyrant, tyrannus, i, m.

U.

unaccustomed, insolitus, a, um.
 unarmed, inermis, e.
 unbroken, infractus, a, um.
 uncertain, incertus, a, um; dubius,
 a, um.
 uncle, *father's brother*, patruus, i,

m.; *mother's brother*, avunculus,
 i, m.
 uncultured, incultus, a, um.
 undaunted, impavidus, a, um.
 under, sub (c. abl. or acc.).
 undergo. *See* endure.
 undermine, subruo, ui, utum, 3.
 understand, intelligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
 undertake, suscipio, cepi, ceptum, 3.
 undertaking, inceptum, i, n.
 undisciplined, rudis, e.
 undisturbed (in mind), aequus, a,
 um.
 undutiful, impius, a, um.
 unequal, impar, paris.
 unfair, iniquus, a, um.
 unfortunate, infelix, icis.
 unfriendly, inimicus, a, um.
 ungrateful, ingratus, a, um.
 unhappy, infelix, icis.
 unharmed, unimpaired, integer,
 gra, grum.
 unity, concordia, ae, f.
 universal, universus, a, um.
 unjust, injustus, a, um.
 unkempt, incomptus, a, um.
 unknown, ignotus, a, um.
 unless, nisi.
 unlike, dissimilis, e.
 unlucky, infelix, icis.
 unmindful, immemor, oris; oblitus,
 a, um.
 unparalleled, egregius, a, um.
 unpunished, inultus, a, um.
 unseasonable, inopportunos, a, um.
 unsullied, intaminatus, a, um.
 untouched, intactus, a, um.
 unwilling, invitus, a, um; *to be*
 unwilling, nolo, ui, nolle.
 unworthy, indignus, a, um.
 upbraid, exprobro, l (c. dat. of
 person).
 uphold, sustineo, ui, tentum, 2.
 uprightness, probitas, atis, f.
 upstart, novus homo.
 use, usus, us, m.
 use, to, utor, usus, 3 (c. abl.).
 useful, utilis, e.
 useless, inutilis, e.
 usual, solitus, a, um; usitatus, a, um.
 usually, fere.
 utter, edo, didi, ditum, 3.

V.

vain, vanus, a, um; inanis, e.
 vainly, frustra.
 valley, vallis, is, f.
 valour, virtus, utis, f.
 vanish, evanesco, vanui, 3.
 vanity, vanitas, atis, f.
 vanquish, vinco, vici, victum, 3.
 variety, diversitas, atis, f.
 various, varying, varius, a, um.
 vast, vastus, a, um; ingens, tis.
 venal, venalis, e.
 vend, vendo, didi, ditum, 3.
 venison, ferina, ae, f. (properly
 an adjective agreeing with *caro*
 understood)
 venture, audeo, ausus sum, 2.
 versatile, varius, a, um.
 verse, carmen, inis, n.; versus, us, m.
 very, (adj.) ipse, a, um; (adv.)
 magnopere.
 vessel, vas, vasis, n.; *ship*, navis,
 is, f.
 veteran, veteranus, i, m.
 vice, vitium, i, n.
 vicious, vitiosus, a, um; pravus, a,
 um.
 vicissitudes, vices, ium, f.
 victor, victor, oris, m.
 victory, victoria, ae, f.
 view, conspectus, us, m.
 vigour, vigor, oris, m.; vires,
 ium, f.
 village, pagus, i, m.
 villain, scelestus, i, m.; scelus,
 eris, n.
 vine, vitis, is, f.
 violate, violō, l.
 violence, vis, acc. vim, abl. vi,
 f.
 virgin, virgo, inis, f.
 virtue, virtus, utis, f.
 virtuous, probus, a, um; bonus, a,
 um.
 vision, visus, us, m.; *dream*, som-
 nium, i, n.
 vividly, too, nimis.
 voice, vox, vocis, f.
 void, expers, tis; vacuus, a, um.
 vow, votum, i, n.
 vulture, vultus, uris, m.

W.

wage war, *gerere bellum*; bello, l.
 wailing, ploratus, us, m.
 wait, maneo, nai, nsum, 2; *wait*
for, expecto, l.
 wake (trans.), excito, l; *be awake*,
 vigilo, l.
 waking, wakefulness, vigilia, ae, f.
 walk, ambulo, l.
 wall, murus, i, m.; *town walls*,
 moenia, ium, n.
 wander, erro, l; vagor, l.
 wane, intereo, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 want, inopia, ae, f.
 wanting, to be, desum, fui, esse.
 war, bellum, i, n.; *make war*, bello, l.
 warfare, militia, ae, f. *See war*.
 warlike, bellicosus, a, um.
 warm, calidus, a, um.
 warmth, calor, oris, m.
 warn, moneo, ui, itum, 2.
 warrior, bellator, oris, m.
 wary, cautus, a, um.
 waste. *See squander*; *lay waste*,
 vasto, l.
 watch, vigilia, ae, f.
 watch, to, vigilo, l.
 water, aqua, ae, f.
 wave, unda, ae, f.; fluctus, us, m.
 wavering, dubius, a, um.
 way, via, ae, f.
 we, nos, nostri or um.
 weak, infirmus, a, um.
 wealth, divitiæ, arum, f.
 wealthy, locuples, pletis. *See rich*.
 weapon, telum, i, n.; *weapons*,
 arma, orum, n.
 wear (a garment), gero, gessi,
 gestum, 3.
 wear away, contero, trivi, tritum, 3.
 weary, fessus, a, um.
 weep, fleo, vi, tum, 2.
 weight, pondus, eris, n.
 weighty, gravis, e.
 well, a, puteus, i, m.
 well, bene; *well disposed*, bonus,
 a, um.
 well, to be, valeo, ui, 2.
 west, occidens, tis, m.
 wet, madidus, a, um.
 wet, get, madesco, dui, 3.

when, quum; ubi; (interrog.) quando.
 whence, unde.
 where, qua; ubi; (interrog.) ubi.
 whether, sive; *in oblique interrogations*, utrum; an; ne (enclitic).
 whether of the two, uter, tra, trum.
 which, qui, quae, quod.
 while, dum.
 white, candidus, a, um; albus, a, um.
 who, qui, quae, quod; (interrog.) quis, [quis,] quid.
 whole, totus, a, um.
 why, cur.
 wicked, malus, a, um; improbus, a, um.
 wide, latus, a, um; *far and wide*, late.
 wife, uxor, oris, f.
 wild, ferus, a, um; saevus, a, um.
 wild-beast, fera, ae, f.
 will, voluntas, atis, f.
 willingly, libenter.
 win over, concilio, l. *See* to gain.
 wind, ventus, i, m.
 wine, vinum, i, n.
 winter, hiems, emis, f.
 winter-quarters, hiberna, orum, n.
 wisdom, sapientia, ae, f.
 wise, sapiens, tis.
 wish, volo, ui, velle, 3; *wish rather*, malo, ui, malle, 3.
 wit, i. e. *talent*, ingenium, i, n.
 with, cum (c. abl.).
 wither, marceo, ui, 2.
 within, intra (c. acc.).
 without, extra (c. acc.).
 withstand, resisto, stiti, stitum, 3 (c. dat.).
 witness, testis, is, c.
 woe, aerumna, ae, f. *See* grief.
 woe (interjection), vae.
 wolf, lupus, i, m.
 woman, mulier, eris, f.; femina, ae, f.
 womanly, muliebris, e.
 wonder, wonder at, miror, 1; admiror.
 wonderful, mirus, a, um.

wont, to be, soleo, itus sum, 2.
 woo, ambio, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
 wood, sylva, ae, f.; lucus, i, m.
 wood, i. e. *timber*, lignum, i, n.
 wooden, ligneus, a, um.
 word, verbum, i, n.
 word-of-honour, fides, ei, f.
 work, opus, eris, n.; labor, oris, m.
 work, to, laboro, l.
 world, mundus, i, m.
 worn-out, confectus, a, um.
 worse, pejor, us.
 worship, colo, ui, cultum, 3; veneror, l.
 worth, dignitas, atis, f.
 worth, to be, valeo, ui, 2.
 worthless, i. e. *cheap*, vilis, e. *See* wicked.
 worthy, dignus, a, um.
 worthy, to deem, dignor, l.
 wound, vulnus, eris, n.
 wound, to, vulnero, l.
 wrath, ira, ae, f.
 wreath, corona, ae, f.; sertum, i, n.
 wretched, miser, era, erum.
 write, scribo, psi, ptum, 3.
 writer, scriptor, oris, m.
 wrong, a, injuria, ae, f.

Y.

year, annus, i, m.; *every year*, quotannis; *a space of two years*, biennium, i, n.
 yellow, flavus, a, um.
 yesterday, heri.
 yet, as yet, adhuc; *nevertheless*, tamen.
 yield, cedo, cessi, cessum, 3.
 yoke, jugum, i, n.
 you, vos, vestri or um.
 young, juvenis, e.
 youth, a, juvenis, is; adolescens, tis, c.
 youth, juvenis, utis, f.

Z.

zeal, studium, i, n.

PROPER NAMES.

A.

Æacus, *Æacus*, i, *m*.
Æbutius, *Aebutius*, i, *m*.
Æqui, *Aequi*, orum, *m*.
Æsculapius, *Aesculapius*, i, *m*.
Africa, *Africa*, ae, *f*.
Agamemnon, *Agamemnon*, onis, *m*.
Agathocles, *Agathocles*, is, *m*.
Agave, *Agave*, es, *f*.
Agésilas, *Agésilas*, i, *m*.
Agricola, *Agricola*, ae, *m*.
Ajax, *Ajax*, acis, *m*.
Albani, *Albani*, orum, *m*.
Albinus, *Albinus*, i, *m*.
Alexander, *Alexander*, dri, *m*.
Alexandria, *Alexandria*, ae, *f*.
Allobroges, *Allobroges*, um, *m*.
Anarcharsis, *Anarcharsis*, is, *m*.
Apelles, *Apelles*, is, *m*.
Apollo, *Apollo*, inis, *m*.
Appius, *Appius*, i, *m*.
April, *Aprilis* (mensis), is, *m*.
Archias, *Archias*, ae, *m*.
Ariovistus, *Ariovistus*, i, *m*.
Aristotle, *Aristoteles*, is, *m*.
Arpinum, *Arpinum*, i, *n*.
Asia, *Asia*, ae, *f*.
Athens, *Athenae*, arum, *f*.
Athenian, *Atheniensis*, e.
August, *Augustus* (mensis), i, *m*.
Aulus, *Aulus*, i, *m*.
Aurelius, *Aurelius*, i, *m*.

B.

Bacchus, *Bacchus*, i, *m*.
Bæbius, *Bæbius*, i, *m*.
Baiæ, *Baiæ*, arum, *f*.
Basilides, *Basilides*, is, *m*.

Bedriacum, *Bedriacum*, i, *n*.
Boadicea, *Boadicea*, ae, *f*.
Bomilcar, *Bomilcar*, aris, *m*.
Brag, *Braga*, ae, *f*.
Britain, *Britannia*, ae, *f*.
Britons, *Britanni*, orum, *m*; *Britones*, um, *m*.
Brutus, *Brutus*, i, *m*.

C.

Cadmus, *Cadmus*, i, *m*.
Cæsar, *Caesar*, aris, *m*.
Caius, *Caius*, i, *m*.
Cajeta, *Cajeta*, ae, *f*.
Caledonia, *Caledonia*, ae, *f*.
Caligula, *Caligula*, ae, *m*.
Campanian, *Campanus*, a, um.
Capua, *Capua*, ae, *f*.
Carthaginian, *Carthaginiensis*, e;
Poenus, a, um.
Carthage, *Carthago*, inis, *f*.
Caspa, *Caspa*, ae, *f*.
Casticus, *Casticus*, i, *m*.
Catiline, *Catilina*, ae, *m*.
Cato, *Cato*, onis, *m*.
Catti, *Catti*, orum, *m*.
Catulus, *Catulus*, i, *m*.
Cerberus, *Cerberus*, i, *m*.
Cerialis, *Cerialis*, is, *m*.
Ceres, *Ceres*, *Cereri*, *f*.
Cethegus, *Cethegus*, i, *m*.
Chalybes, *Chalybes*, um, *m*.
Chremes, *Chremes*, etis, *m*.
Christian, *Christianus*, a, um.
Chrysis, *Chrysis*, idis, *f*.
Cicero, *Cicero*, onis, *m*.
Cirta, *Cirta*, ae, *f*.
Claudius, *Claudius*, i, *m*.
Clodius, *Clodius*, i, *m*.

Cnæus, Cnæus, i, *m*.
 Collega, Collega, æ, *m*.
 Corinthus, Corinthus, i, *m*.
 Coriolanus, Coriolanus, i, *m*.
 Crassus, Crassus, i, *m*.
 Cremona, Cremona, æ, *f*.
 Cuphites, Cuphites, is, *f*.
 Curio, Curio, onis, *m*.
 Cyrenian, Cyrenaens, a, um.

D.

Damasippus, Damasippus, i, *m*.
 December, December (mensis), bris, *m*.
 Demænetus, Demænetus, i, *m*.
 Democritus, Democritus, i, *m*.
 Densus, Densus, i, *m*.
 Deucalion, Deucalion, onis, *m*.
 Diodotus, Diodotus, i, *m*.
 Dionysius, Dionysius, i, *m*.
 Dionysus, Dionysus, i, *m*.
 Domitian, Domitianus, i, *m*.

E.

Egypt, Aegyptus, i, *f*.
 Egyptian, Aegyptius, a, um.
 Ennius, Ennius, i, *m*.
 Epaminondas, Epaminondas, æ, *m*.
 Ephesus, Ephesus, i, *f*.
 Epictetus, Epictetus, i, *m*.
 Epicurus, Epicurus, i, *m*.
 Epidaurus, Epidaurus, i, *m*.
 Etruria, Etruria, æ, *f*.

F.

Fabius, Fabius, i, *m*.
 Fabricius, Fabricius, i, *m*.
 Frisii, Frisii, orum, *m*.
 Furius, Furius, i, *m*.

G.

Gabii, Gabii, orum, *m*.
 Gabinus, Gabinus, i, *m*.

Galba, Galba, æ, *m*.
 Gargara, Gargara, orum, *n*.
 Gætuli, Gaetuli, orum, *m*.
 Gaul, the country, Gallia, æ, *f*.
 Gaul, a native of the country, Gallus, i, *m*.
 German, Germanus, a, um.
 Germanicus, Germanicus, i, *m*.
 Germany, Germania, æ, *f*.
 Glycerium, Glycerium, i, *n*. (used as the name of a woman).
 Gracchus, Gracchus, i, *m*.
 Grattus, Grattus, i, *m*.
 Greece, Graecia, æ, *f*.
 Greek, Graecus, a, um.

H.

Hannibal, Hannibal, alis, *n*.
 Hasdrubal, Hasdrubal, alis, *m*.
 Helusii, Helusii, orum, *m*.
 Helvetii, Helvetii, orum, *m*.
 Hercules, Hercules, is, *m*.
 Herdonius, Herdonius, i, *m*.
 Hiempsal, Hiempsal, alis, *m*.
 Horace, Horatius, i, *m*.
 Horatii, Horatii, orum, *m*.
 Hyppolytus, Hyppolytus, i, *m*.
 Hyrcania, Hyrcania, æ, *f*.

I.

Iberus, Iberus, i, *m*.
 India, India, æ, *f*.
 Ireland, Hibernia, æ, *f*.
 Ister, Ister, tri, *m*.
 Italy, Italia, æ, *f*.

J.

January, Januarius (mensis), i, *m*.
 Jerusalem, Hierosolyma, orum, *n*.
 Jew, Judæus, i, *m*.
 Jordan, Jordanus, i, *m*.
 Jugurtha, Jugurtha, æ, *m*.
 Julius, Julius, i, *m*.

June, Junius (mensis), *i, m.*
 Juno, Juno, *onis, f.*
 Jupiter, Jupiter, Jovis, *m.*

L.

Laelius, Laelius, *i, m.*
 Latin, Latinus, *a, um.*
 Libyes, Libyes, *um, m.*
 Livius, Livius, *i, m.*
 Lucius, Lucius, *i, m.*
 Lucullus, Lucullus, *i, m.*
 Lycurgus, Lycurgus, *i, m.*
 Lyons, Lugdunum, *i, n.*

M.

Manlius, Manlius, *i, m.*
 Marcellus, Marcellus, *i, m.*
 March, Martius (mensis), *i, m.*
 Marcus, Marcus, *i, m.*
 Marius, Marius, *i, m.*
 Marseilles, Massilia, *ae, f.*
 Masinissa, Masinissa, *ae, m.*
 Maximus, Maximus, *i, m.*
 Menelaus, Menelaus, *i, m.*
 Menippus, Menippus, *i, m.*
 Metellus, Metellus, *i, m.*
 Mettius, Mettius, *i, m.*
 Micipsa, Micipsa, *ae, m.*
 Milesian, Milesius, *a, um.*
 Miletus, Miletus, *i, f.*
 Minos, Minos, *ois, m.*
 Mithridates, Mithridates, *is, m.*
 Moor, Maurus, *i, m.*

N.

Naples, Neapolis, *is, f.*
 Nero, Nero, *onis, m.*
 Nervii, Nervii, *orum, m.*
 Nestor, Nestor, *oris, m.*
 Nile, Nilus, *i, m.*
 Numa, Numa, *ae, m.*
 Numidia, Numidia, *ae, f.*
 Numidian, a, Numida, *ae, m.*

O.

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, *igis, m.*
 Ortona, Ortona, *ae, f.*
 Osciani, Osciani, *orum, m.*
 Otho, Otho, *onis, m.*

P.

Padus, Padus, *i, m.*
 Panætius, Panaetius, *i, m.*
 Paulinus, Paulinus, *i, m.*
 Paulus, Paulus, *i, m.*
 Pentheus, Pentheus, *i, m.*
 Philip, Philippus, *i, m.*
 Philippi, Philippi, *orum, m.*
 Philænus, Philænus, *i, m.*
 Phormio, Phormio, *onis, m.*
 Piso, Piso, *onis, m.*
 Plato, Plato, *onis, m.*
 Polycrates, Polycrates, *is, m.*
 Pompey, Pompeius, *i, m.*
 Pontus, Pontus, *i, m.*
 Posidonius, Posidonius, *i, m.*
 Prometheus, Prometheus, *i, m.*
 Publius, Publius, *i, m.*
 Puteoli, Puteoli, *orum, m.*
 Pythagorean, Pythagoreus, *a, um.*
 Pythian, Pythicus, *a, um.*

Q.

Quintus, Quintus, *i, m.*
 Quirites, Quirites, *um, m.*

R.

Regium Lepidum, Regium Lepidum, *i, n.*
 Regulus, Regulus, *i, m.*
 Remus, Remus, *i, m.*
 Rhadamanthus, Rhadamanthus, *i, m.*
 Rhine, Rhenus, *i, m.*
 Rhone, Rhodanus, *i, m.*
 Rome, Roma, *ae, f.*

Romulus, Romulus, *i, m.*
 Roscius, Roscius, *i, m.*
 Rufus, Rufus, *i, m.*

S.

Sabine, Sabinus, *a, um.*
 Saguntines, Saguntini, *orum, m.*
 Samnites, Samnites, *um, m.*
 Saurea, Saurea, *ae, m.*
 Scipio, Scipio, *onis, m.*
 Scythian, *a, Scythia, ae, m.*
 Sempronia, Sempronia, *ae, f.*
 Sempronius, Sempronius, *i, m.*
 Serapis, Serapis, *is and idia, f.*
 Servii, Servii, *orum, m.*
 Servilius, Servilius, *i, m.*
 Sextius, Sextius, *i, m.*
 Sicca, Sicca, *ae, f.*
 Sicily, Sicily, *ae, f.*
 Sisenna, Sisenna, *ae, m.*
 Socrates, Socrates, *is, f.*
 Spain, Hispania, *ae, f.*
 Spartan, Spartanus, *a, um.*
 Spurius, Spurius, *i, m.*
 Strato, Strato, *onis, m.*
 Suevi, Suevi, *orum, m.*
 Sulla, Sulla, *ae, m.*
 Suthul, Suthul, *is, n.*

T.

Tarentum, Tarentum, *i, n.*
 Tarquin, Tarquinius, *i, m.*
 Terence, Terentius, *i, m.*
 Thala, Thala, *ae, f.*
 Thales, Thales, *is and etis, m.*
 Thebes, Thebes, *arum, f.*
 Themistocles, Themistocles, *is, m.*
 Thetis, Thetis, *idos or idia, f.*
 Thule, Thule, *es, f.*

Tiber, Tiber, *eris, m.*
 Tiberius, Tiberius, *i, m.*
 Ticinus, Ticinus, *i, m.*
 Tigranes, Tigranes, *is, m.*
 Titus, Titus, *i, m.*
 Tmolus, Tmolus, *i, m.*
 Trasymenus, Trasymenus, *i, m.*
 Trebia, Trebia, *ae, f.*
 Trojan, Trojanus, *a, um.*
 Troy, Troja, *ae, f.*; Ilium, *i, n.*

U.

Usipii, Usipii, *orum, m.*

V.

Vacca, Vacca, *ae, f.*
 Valens, Valens, *tis, m.*
 Varus, Varus, *i, m.*
 Verona, Verona, *ae, f.*
 Vespasian, Vespasianus, *i, m.*
 Victoria, Victoria, *ae, f.*
 Vincus, Vincus, *i, m.*
 Virgil, Virgilius, Virgilius, *i, m.*
 Vitellianist, Vitellianus, *i, m.*
 Vitellius, Vitellius, *i, m.*

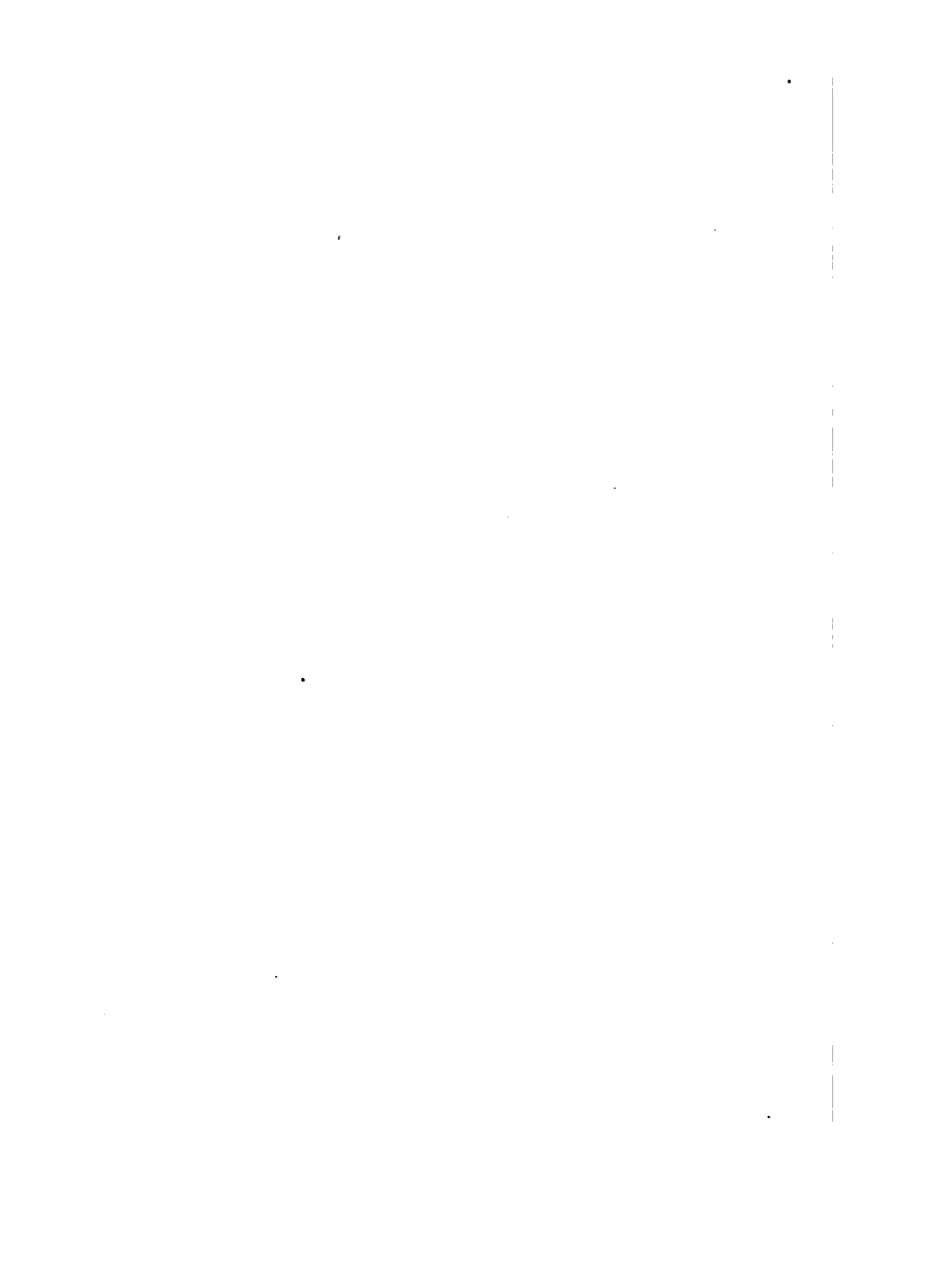
X.

Xerxes, Xerxes, *is, m.*

Z.

Zama, Zama, *ae, f.*
 Zeno, Zeno, *onis, m.*

THE END.



3, WATERLOO PLACE, Pall Mall
March, 1875.

Books for Schools and Colleges

PUBLISHED BY

MESSRS. RIVINGTON

HISTORY

An English History for the Use of Public Schools.

*By the Rev. J. FRANCK BRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of University College,
and Historical Lecturer in Balliol, New, and University Colleges, Oxford;
late Master of the Modern School in Marlborough College.*

With numerous Maps and Plans. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*]

This work will be divided into three Periods, each sold separately and complete in itself, with Contents, Maps, Plans and Index. These Periods will be of convenient and handy size, especially adapted for use in Schools, as well as for Students reading special portions of History for local and other Examinations. It will also be issued in One Complete Volume.

Period I.—FEUDAL MONARCHY: The departure of the Romans, to Richard III. From A.D. 449 to A.D. 1485.

Period II.—PERSONAL MONARCHY: Henry VII. to James II. From A.D. 1485 to A.D. 1688.

Period III.—CONSTITUTIONAL MONARCHY: William and Mary, to the present time. From A.D. 1688 to A.D. 1837.

About five years ago, after a meeting of a considerable number of Public School Masters, it was proposed to the Author that he should write a School History of England. As the suggestion was generally supported he undertook the task. The work was intended to supply some deficiencies felt to exist in the School Books which were at that time procurable. It was hoped that the work would be completed in three years, but a series of untoward events has postponed its completion till now. The Author has attempted to embody, in the present publication, so much of the fruit of many years' historical reading, and of considerable experience in teaching history, as he believes will be useful in rendering the study at once an instructive and an interesting pursuit for boys. Starting from the supposition that his readers know but little of the subject, he has tried to give a plain narrative of events, and at the same time so far to trace their connection, causes, and effects, as to supply the student with a more reasonable and intelligent idea of the course of English History than is given by any mere compendium of facts. It has been thought convenient to retain the ordinary divisions into reigns, and to follow primarily, throughout, the Political History of the country; at the same time considerable care has been given to bring out the great Social Changes which have occurred from time to time, and to follow the growth of the people and nation at large, as well as that of the Monarchy or of special classes. A considerable number of genealogies of the leading Houses of the 14th and 15th centuries have been introduced to illustrate that period. The later periods are related at considerably greater length than the earlier ones. The foreign events in which England took part have been, as far as space allowed, brought into due prominence; while by the addition of numerous maps and plans, in which every name mentioned will be found, it is hoped that reference to a separate atlas will be found unnecessary. The marginal analysis has been collected at the beginning of the volume, so as to form an abstract of the History, suitable for the use of those who are beginning the study.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

HISTORICAL HANDBOOKS—continued.

ENGLISH HISTORY IN THE XIVTH CENTURY.

By CHARLES H. PEARSON, M.A., *Principal of the Presbyterian Ladies' College, Melbourne, late Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford, and Professor of History in the University of Melbourne.*

[In the Press.]

THE GREAT REBELLION.

By the EDITOR.

HISTORY OF THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

By the Rev. J. FRANCK BRIGHT, M.A., *Fellow of University College, and Historical Lecturer in Balliol, New, and University Colleges, Oxford; late Master of the Modern School at Marlborough College.*

THE AGE OF CHATHAM.

By Sir W. R. ANSON, Bart., M.A., *Fellow of All Souls' College, and Vinerian Reader of Law, Oxford.*

THE AGE OF PITT.

By the Same.

THE REIGN OF LOUIS XI.

By F. WILLERT, M.A., *Fellow and Lecturer of Exeter College, Oxford.*

THE SUPREMACY OF ATHENS.

By R. C. JEBB, M.A., *Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Public Orator of the University.*

THE ROMAN REVOLUTION. From B.C. 133 to the Battle of Actium.

By H. F. PELHAM, M.A., *Fellow and Lecturer of Exeter College, Oxford.*

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

By SIR GEORGE YOUNG, BART., *late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.*

(See Specimen Page, No. 3.)

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

In preparation

HISTORICAL BIOGRAPHIES

Edited by

THE REV. M. CREIGHTON, M.A.,

FELLOW AND TUTOR OF MERTON COLLEGE, OXFORD,

With Frontispiece and Maps.

The most important and the most difficult point in Historical Teaching is to awaken a real interest in the minds of Beginners. For this purpose concise handbooks are seldom useful. General sketches, however accurate in their outlines of political or constitutional development, and however well adapted to dispel false ideas, still do not make history a living thing to the *young*. They are most valuable as maps on which to trace the route beforehand and show its direction, but they will seldom allure any one to take a walk.

The object of this series of Historical Biographies is to try and select from English History a few men whose lives were lived in stirring times. The intention is to treat their lives and times in some little detail, and to group round them the most distinctive features of the periods before and after those in which they lived.

It is hoped that in this way interest may be awakened without any sacrifice of accuracy, and that personal sympathies may be kindled without forgetfulness of the principles involved.

It may be added that round the lives of individuals it will be possible to bring together facts of social life in a clearer way, and to reproduce a more vivid picture of particular times than is possible in a historical handbook.

By reading Short Biographies a few clear ideas may be formed in the pupil's mind, which may stimulate to further reading. A vivid impression of one period, however short, will carry the pupil onward and give more general histories an interest in their turn. Something, at least, will be gained if the pupil realises that men in past times lived and moved in the same sort of way as they do at present.

It is proposed to issue the following Biographies adapted to the reading of pupils between the ages of 12 and 15:

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. SIMON DE MONTFORT. | 5. THE DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH. |
| 2. THE BLACK PRINCE. | 6. WILLIAM PITT, |
| 3. SIR WALTER RALEIGH. | or, THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON. |
| 4. OLIVER CROMWELL. | |

History of the Church under the Roman Empire, A.D. 30-476.

*By the Rev. A. D. CRAKE, B.A., Chaplain of All Saints' School,
Bloxham.*

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

A History of England for Children.

By GEORGE DAVYS, D.D., *formerly Bishop of Peterborough.*

New Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

With twelve Coloured Illustrations. Square cr. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

ENGLISH

ENGLISH SCHOOL-CLASSICS

With Introductions and Notes at the end of each Book.

Edited by FRANCIS STORR, B.A.,

ASSISTANT-MASTER AT MARLBOROUGH COLLEGE, LATE SCHOLAR OF TRINITY COLLEGE,
CAMBRIDGE, AND BELL UNIVERSITY SCHOLAR.

Small 8vo.

THOMSON'S SEASONS: Winter.

With Introduction to the Series, by the Rev. J. FRANK BRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of University College, and Historical Lecturer in Balliol, New, and University Colleges, Oxford; late Master of the Modern School at Marlborough College. 1s.

COWPER'S TASK.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. 2s.

Part I. (Book I.—The Sofa; Book II.—The Timepiece) 9d. Part II. (Book III.—The Garden; Book IV.—The Winter Evening) 9d. Part III. (Book V.—The Winter Morning Walk; Book VI.—The Winter Walk at Noon) 9d.

SCOTT'S LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL.

By J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., Head Master of Bedford School, formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford. 2s. 6d.

Part I. (Canto I., with Introduction, &c.) 9d. Part II. (Cantos II. and III.) 9d. Part III. (Cantos IV. and V.) 9d. Part IV. (Canto VI.) 9d.

SCOTT'S LADY OF THE LAKE.

By R. W. TAYLOR, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School. 2s.

Part I. (Cantos I. and II.) 9d. Part II. (Cantos III. and IV.) 9d. Part III. (Cantos V. and VI.) 9d.

SCOTT'S WAVERLEY.

By H. W. EVE, M.A., Assistant-Master at Wellington College.

TWENTY OF BACON'S ESSAYS.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. 1s.

SIMPLE POEMS.

Edited by W. E. MULLINS, M.A. Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. 8d.

SELECTIONS FROM WORDSWORTH'S POEMS.

By H. H. TURNER, B.A., late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1s.

WORDSWORTH'S EXCURSION: The Wanderer.

By H. H. TURNER, B.A., late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1s.

MILTON'S PARADISE LOST.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College.
Book I. 9d. Book II. 9d.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

ENGLISH SCHOOL CLASSICS—continued.

SELECTIONS FROM THE SPECTATOR.

By OSMUND AIRY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Wellington College. 1s.

BROWNE'S RELIGIO MEDICI.

By W. P. SMITH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Winchester College. 1s.

GOLDSMITH'S TRAVELLER AND DESERTED VILLAGE.

By C. SANKEY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. 1s.

SELECTIONS FROM BURNS' POEMS.

By A. M. BELL, M.A., Assistant-Master at Fettes College, Edinburgh.

MACAULAY'S ESSAYS.

MOORE'S LIFE OF BYRON. By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 9d.

BOSWELL'S LIFE OF JOHNSON. By FRANCIS STORR, B.A. 9d.

HALLAM'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY. By H. F. BOYD, late Scholar of Brasenose College, Oxford. 9d.

SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON.

By W. E. MULLINS, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College.

See The General Introduction to the Series will be found in Thomson's WINTER.(See Specimen Pages, Nos. 1 and 2.)*

"This is a very neat, handy, and cheap series of the English Classics, suited for school purposes."—*Educational Times*.

"In the notes nothing is passed over that can possibly require elucidation, and moreover every line is made to suggest an opportunity for imparting information. They are very cheap, handy, and valuable little books."—*School Board Chronicle*.

"Such reprints are by no means uncommon, several attempts having already been made to adapt special portions of our literature to the requirements of different examinations and the increased importance now attached to the study of English. But few that we have seen come up in all respects to those before us."—*Leeds Mercury*.

"Cheap, well-printed, and excellently annotated manuals, especially adapted for the use of candidates in the Local University Examinations."—*Standard*.

"Much information is indeed given in the notes which is both apt and interesting."—*Saturday Review*.

"Nothing can be more to the purpose than the brief notes, nothing clearer and more suggestive than the lives and introductions."—*English Churchman*.

"A series of valuable little works for students of English literature."—*Rock*.

"Schoolmasters would do well to consult this admirable series."—*John Bull*.

"The notes are always brief, informing, and to the point. In etymology our editors are very successful."—*Nonconformist*.

"Besides the text there are biographical introductions of the authors, and copious explanatory notes, most useful for elucidating the text, and very helpful to young students."—*Sheffield and Rotherham Independent*.

"Of the work of the editors, whether in the biographical sketches or the annotations, we must speak with commendation undiluted by equivocal remark. It is excellent, and excellently adapted to make the authors and their poems well understood."—*Newcastle Courant*.

"These volumes are neatly bound in cloth, compressed into a size convenient for the pocket, and published at a very low rate."—*Cambridge Chronicle*.

"The series will be found of great use by students, especially those competing in the University Local Examinations. The notes are full and numerous, and thoroughly explain the most difficult passages in the several works."—*Liverpool Daily Post*.

"We do not remember seeing any (text-books) which were at all comparable to these in choice of matter, completeness of design, and last, though perhaps not least, cheapness."—*Oxford Chronicle*.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

SELECT PLAYS OF SHAKSPERE

RUGBY EDITION.

With an Introduction and Notes to each Play.

Small 8vo.

AS YOU LIKE IT. 2s.

Edited by the Rev. CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A., Assistant-Master in Rugby School, and formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford.

MACBETH. 2s.

Edited by the SAME.

CORIOLANUS. 2s. 6d.

Edited by ROBERT WHITELAW, M.A., Assistant-Master in Rugby School, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

HAMLET. 2s. 6d.

Edited by the Rev. CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A.

THE TEMPEST.

Edited by J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., Head-Master of Bedford School, formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford.

With Notes at the end of the Volume. [In the press.]

English Grammar for English Schoolboys.

An Introduction to English Etymology and Accidence, Syntax and Analysis, Style and Prosody.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College.

Small 8vo.

[In preparation.]

A Practical Introduction to English Prose Composition.

An English Grammar for Classical Schools, with Questions, and a Course of Exercises.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Tenth Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

MATHEMATICS

RIVINGTONS' MATHEMATICAL SERIES

The following Schools, amongst many others, use this Series:—
 Eton : Harrow : Winchester : Charterhouse : Marlborough : Shrewsbury :
 Cheltenham : Clifton : City of London School : Haileybury : Tonbridge :
 Durham : Fettes College, Edinburgh : Owen's College, Manchester : H.M.'s
 Dockyard School, Sheerness : Hurstpierpoint : King William's College,
 Isle of Man : St. Peter's, Clifton, York : Birmingham : Bedford : Felsted :
 Christ's College, Finchley : Liverpool College : Windermere College :
 Eastbourne College : Brentwood : Perse School, Cambridge. Also in use
 in Canada : H.M. Training Ships : Royal Naval College, Greenwich :
 Melbourne University, Australia : the other Colonies : and some of the
 Government Schools in India.

OPINIONS OF TUTORS AND SCHOOLMASTERS,

"A person who carefully studies these books will have a thorough and accurate knowledge of the subjects on which they treat."—*H. A. Morgan, M.A., Tutor of Jesus College, Cambridge.*

"We have for some time used your Mathematical books in our Lecture Room, and find them well arranged, and well calculated to clear up the difficulties of the subjects. The examples also are numerous and well-selected."—*N. M. Ferrers, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.*

"I have used in my Lecture Room Mr. Hamblin Smith's text-books with very great advantage."—*James Porter, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of St. Peter's College, Cambridge.*

"For beginners there could be no better books, as I have found when examining different schools."—*A. W. W. Steel, M.A., Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.*

"I consider Mr. Hamblin Smith's Mathematical Works to be a very valuable series for beginners. His Algebra in particular I think is the best book of its kind for schools and for the ordinary course at Cambridge."—*F. Patrick, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Magdalen College, Cambridge.*

"The series is a model of clearness and insight into possible difficulties."—*Rev. J. F. Blake, St. Peter's College, Clifton, York.*

"I can say with pleasure that I have used your books extensively in my work at

Haileybury, and have found them on the whole well adapted for boys."—*Thomas Pitts, M.A., Assistant Mathematical Master at Haileybury College.*

"I can strongly recommend them all."—*W. Henry, M.A., Sub-Warden, Trinity College, Glenalmond.*

"I consider Mr. Smith has supplied a great want, and cannot but think that his works must command extensive use in good schools."—*J. Henry, B.A., Head-Master, H.M. Dockyard School, Sheerness, and Instructor of Engineers, R.N.*

"We have used your Algebra and Trigonometry extensively at this School from the time they were first published, and I thoroughly agree with every mathematical teacher I have met, that, as school text-books, they have no equals. We are introducing your Euclid gradually into the School."—*Rev. B. Edwards, sen., Mathematical Master at the College, Hurstpierpoint, Sussex.*

"I consider them to be the best books of their kind on the subject which I have yet seen."—*Joshua Jones, D.C.L., Head-Master, King William's College, Isle of Man.*

"I have very great pleasure in expressing an opinion as to the value of these books. I have used them under very different circumstances, and have always been satisfied with the results obtained."—*C. H. W. Biggs, Mathematical Editor of the 'English Mechanic.'*

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

SCIENCE

Preparing for Publication,

SCIENCE CLASS-BOOKS

Edited by

THE REV. ARTHUR RIGG, M.A.,
LATE PRINCIPAL OF THE COLLEGE, CHESTER.

These Volumes are designed expressly for School use, and by their especial reference to the requirements of a School Class-Book, aim at making Science-teaching a subject for regular and methodical study in Public and Private Schools.

AN ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK ON SOUND.

By GEORGE CAREY FOSTER, B.A., F.R.S., Fellow of, and Professor of Physics in, University College, London.

AN ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOK ON ELECTRICITY.

By GEORGE CAREY FOSTER, B.A., F.R.S., Fellow of, and Professor of Physics in, University College, London.

BOTANY FOR CLASS-TEACHING.

With Exercises for Private Work.

By F. E. KITCHENER, M.A., F.L.S., Assistant-Master at Rugby School, and late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

ASTRONOMY FOR CLASS-TEACHING.

With Exercises for Private Work.

By WALLIS HAY LAVERTY, M.A., late Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.

The knowledge of Mathematics assumed will be Euclid, Books I.-VI., and Quadratic Equations.

Other Works are in preparation.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

A Year's Botany.

Adapted to Home and School Use.

By FRANCES ANNA KITCHENER.

Illustrated by the Author. Crown 8vo. 5s.

(See Specimen Page, No. 5.)

CONTENTS.

General Description of Flowers—Flowers with Simple Pistils—Flowers with Compound Pistils—Flowers with Apocarpous Fruits—Flowers with Syncarpous Fruits—Stamens and Morphology of Branches—Fertilisation—Seeds—Early Growth and Food of Plants—Wood, Stems, and Roots—Leaves—Classification—Umbellates, Composites, Spurges, and Pines—Some Monocotyledonous Families—Orchids—Appendix of Technical Terms—Index.

In almost all cases the illustrations are drawn from nature, and have never been made diagrammatic, except when absolutely necessary, because the tendency of diagrammatic drawings is to make the reader satisfied with them, without verifying each point in the flowers themselves.

In the Appendix the wants of students preparing for the University Local Examinations are kept in view.

"A very clear and readable handbook of botany, which is equally adapted for personal use and class teaching. The author has avoided technical terms as much as possible, so that her work may be studied without difficulty by a beginner."—*Saturday Review*.

"We know of no book which we could more safely and confidently place in the hands of young people as their first guide to a knowledge of Botany."—*Nature*.

"This little book we have carefully read, and we can commend it to the careful attention of all who are interested in the subject. It is evidently a book written by one who thoroughly understands her subject."

Popular Science Review.

"That Mrs. Kitchener has in this little book struck out a new and useful idea in connection with the reading of Botany, and that she has carried it out remarkably well, there can be no doubt."—*Westminster Review*.

An Easy Introduction to Chemistry.

For the use of Families and Schools.

Edited by the Rev. ARTHUR RIGG, M.A., late Principal of The College, Chester.

New Edition, considerably altered and revised.

With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

(See Specimen Page, No. 6.)

"We seldom come across a work of such simplicity in chemistry as this. It ought to be in the hands of every student of chemistry."—*Chemical Review*.

"There are a simplicity and a clearness in the description and explanations given in this little volume which certainly commend it to the attention of the young."

Athenæum.

"The information is clearly conveyed, and the illustrations are neatly and prettily executed as possible."—*Educational Times*.

"... The style is exceedingly simple, and the teaching is precise and clear. The illustrations of chemical apparatus are

good, and the directions how to use them intelligible to a very young reader."

Edinburgh Courant.

"I am much pleased with Mr. Rigg's little book, which enables me to give my children lessons in chemistry. Even the youngest are asking questions about the illustrations. The work supplies a want which has been long felt, and I hope it will have an extensive sale."—*W. Severn, Esq., one of H.M. Inspectors of Schools.*

"It would be difficult to name a work more calculated to foster a taste for the study of Chemistry in the minds of the young."—*Chemical News*.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

LATIN

Elementary Rules of Latin Pronunciation.

Especially drawn up for use in Schools.

By ARTHUR HOLMES, M.A., *Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall, Editor of "Catena Classicorum."*

Crown 8vo. On a card, 9d.

Outlines of Latin Sentence Construction.

By E. D. MANSFIELD, B.A., *Assistant-Master at Clifton College.*

Demy 8vo. On a card, 1s.

Easy Exercises in Latin Prose.

With Notes.

By CHARLES BIGG, M.A., *Principal of Brighton College.*

Small 8vo. 1s. 4d.; sewed, 9d.

Latin Prose Exercises.

For Beginners, and Junior Forms of Schools.

By R. PROWDE SMITH, B.A., *Assist.-Master at Cheltenham College.*

[This Book can be used with or without the PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.] New Edition. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"This is certainly an improvement on the grammar-school method, and may be a step in the way of teaching English before Latin."—*Examiner*.

"The plan upon which these exercises are founded is decidedly a good one, and none the less so that it is a very simple one."—*Educational Times*.

"This book differs from others of the same class in containing lessons in English

to assist beginners in doing the Latin exercises. We quite agree with Mr. Smith as to the necessity of some knowledge of English and the principles of Grammar, as a qualification for writing Latin Prose correctly. His explanation of the more difficult constructions and idioms is very distinct, and altogether the book is highly satisfactory."—*Athenaeum*.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

Henry's First Latin Book.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Twenty-second Edition. 12mo. 3s. Tutor's Key, 1s.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books* by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Sixteenth Edition. 8vo. 6s. 6d. Tutor's Key, 1s. 6d.

Cornelius Nepos.

With Critical Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Fifth Edition. 12mo. 4s.

A First Verse Book.

Being an Easy Introduction to the Mechanism of the Latin Hexameter and Pentameter.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Eleventh Edition. 12mo. 2s. Tutor's Key, 1s.

Progressive Exercises in Latin Elegiac Verse.

By C. G. GEPP, B.A., late Junior Student of Christ Church, Oxford; Head-Master of the College, Stratford-on-Avon.

Third Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. Tutor's Key, 5s.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books* by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Selections from Livy, Books VIII. and IX.

With Notes and Map.

By E. CALVERT, LL.D., St. John's College, Cambridge; and R. SAWARD, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master in Shrewsbury School.

Small 8vo. 2s.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

New Edition, re-arranged, with fresh Pieces and additional References.

Materials and Models for Latin Prose Composition.

Selected and arranged by J. Y. SARGENT, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Magdalen College, Oxford; and T. F. DALLIN, M.A., Tutor, late Fellow, of Queen's College, Oxford.

Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

(See Specimen Page, No. 7.)

It having been determined to work out in greater detail in this Second Edition the principles on which the First Edition of *Materials and Models* was constructed, the whole work has been re-arranged and enlarged, and for the future will be published in two separate volumes, one for Latin, and one for Greek Prose Compositions, instead of combining both parts in the same volume.

Each passage has been furnished with a heading. The Editors have re-arranged the pieces under additional subordinate heads, grouping together those passages which are cognate in matter or form. Thus, under HISTORICAL are ranged Sieges, Battles, &c., &c.; under PHILOSOPHICAL Literary Criticism, Ethics, Speculations on God, a Future State, &c.; while CHARACTERS have been placed in a section by themselves. This grouping will facilitate reference, but another feature has been added of more importance still, viz. reference to subjects; for in addition to the particular reference at the end of each piece, a group of references has been prefixed to each separate section, so that the student having selected a subject or passage of a certain kind, say a sea-fight, to translate or treat as an original theme, may be able to refer at once to those passages in the best Classical Authors where sea-fights are described; or if he wishes to write a character he may be enabled to see at a glance where the typical characters of classical antiquity are to be found.

In this new Edition the old references have been verified and fresh ones added; new pieces of English have been inserted, or in some cases substituted for the old ones.

Latin Version of (60) Selected Pieces from Materials and Models.

By J. Y. SARGENT, M.A.

Crown 8vo. 5s.

May be had by Tutors only, on direct application to the Publishers.

Eclogæ Ovidianæ.

From the Elegiac Poems. With English Notes.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Thirteenth Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

Classical Examination Papers.

*Edited, with Notes and References, by P. J. F. GANTILLON, M.A.,
Classical Master in Cheltenham College.*

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Or interleaved with writing-paper, half-bound, 10s. 6d.

Terenti Comoediae.

*Edited by T. L. PAPILLON, M.A., Fellow of New College, and late
Fellow of Merton, Oxford.*

ANDRIA ET EUNUCHUS.

Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."

Juvenalis Satirae.

*Edited by G. A. SIMCOX, M.A., late Fellow and Classical Lecturer
Queen's College, Oxford.*

THIRTEEN SATIRES.

Second Edition, enlarged and revised. Crown 8vo. 5s.

Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."

Persii Satirae.

*Edited by A. PRETOR, M.A., of Trinity College, Cambridge, Classical
Lecturer of Trinity Hall, Composition Lecturer of the Perse Grammar
School, Cambridge.*

Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."

Horati Opera.

By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., Under-Master in Dulwich College.

VOL. I.—THE ODES, CARMEN SECULARE, AND EPODES.

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."

Taciti Historiae.

*Edited by W. H. SIMCOX, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Queen's
College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo.

[In the Press.]

Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."

GREEK

An Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.

By ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A., *Assistant-Master at Rugby School, and formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.*

[In preparation.]

A Table of Irregular Greek Verbs.

Classified according to the arrangement of Curtius's Greek Grammar.

By FRANCIS STORR, B.A., *Assistant-Master in Marlborough College, late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Bell University Scholar.*

On a Card. 1s.

Elements of Greek Accidence.

By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., *Lecturer in Balliol College, Oxford, and late Assistant-Master in Clifton College.*

Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"This is an excellent book. The compilers of elementary Greek Grammars have not before, so far as we are aware, made full use of the results obtained by the labours of philologists during the last twenty-five years. Mr. Abbott's great merit is that he has; and a comparison between his book and the *Rudimenta* of

the late Dr. Donaldson—a most excellent volume for the time at which it was published—will show how considerable the advance has been; while a comparison with the works in ordinary use, which have never attained anything like the standard reached by Dr. Donaldson, will really surprise the teacher."—*Athenaeum*.

Selections from Lucian.

With English Notes.

By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., *Lecturer in Balliol College, Oxford, and late Assistant-Master in Clifton College.*

Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Alexander the Great in the Punjaub.

Adapted from Arrian, Book V.

An easy Greek Reading Book, with Notes at the end and a Map.

By the Rev. CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A., *Assistant-Master in Rugby School, and formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford.*

Small 8vo.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

Stories from Herodotus.

The Tales of Rhampsinitus and Polycrates, and the Battle of Marathon and the Alcmaeonidae. *In Attic Greek.*

Adapted for use in Schools, by J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., Head Master of Bedford School; formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford.

Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Iophon: an Introduction to the Art of Writing Greek Iambic Verses.

By the WRITER of "Nuces" and "Lucretilis."

Crown 8vo. 2s.

In use at Eton College.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books*, by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

The First Greek Book.

On the plan of *Henry's First Latin Book.*

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Sixth Edition. 12mo. 5s. Tutor's Key, 1s. 6d.

A Practical Introduction to Greek Accidence.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Ninth Edition. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

A Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Twelfth Edition. 8vo. 5s. 6d. Tutor's Key, 1s. 6d.

Madvig's Syntax of the Greek Language, especially of the Attic Dialect.

For the use of Schools.

Edited by THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

New Edition. Imperial 16mo. 8s. 6d.

SCENES FROM GREEK PLAYS

RUGBY EDITION

Abridged and adapted for the use of Schools, by

ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A.,

ASSISTANT-MASTER AT RUGBY SCHOOL, AND FORMERLY FELLOW OF
TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

Small 8vo. 1s. 6d. each.

Aristophanes.

THE CLOUDS. THE FROGS. THE KNIGHTS. PLUTUS.

Euripides.

IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. THE CYCLOPS. ION.

ELECTRA. ALCESTIS. BACCHÆ. HECUBA.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books*, by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

"Mr. Sidgwick has put on the title-pages of these modest little volumes the words 'Rugby Edition,' but we shall be much mistaken if they do not find a far wider circulation. The prefaces or introductions which Mr. Sidgwick has prefixed to his 'Scenes' tell the youthful student all that he need know about the play that he is taking in hand, and the parts chosen are those which give the general scope and drift of the action of the play."—*School Board Chronicle*.

"Each play is printed separately, on good paper, and in a neat and handy form. The difficult passages are explained by the notes appended, which are of a particularly useful and intelligible kind. In all respects this edition presents a very pleasing contrast to the German editions hitherto in general use, with their Latin explanatory notes—themselves often requiring explanation. A new feature in this edition, which deserves mention, is the insertion in English of the stage directions. By means of them and the argument prefixed, the study of the play is much simplified."—*Scotsman*.

"A short preface explains the action of the play in each case, and there are a few notes at the end which will clear up most of the difficulties likely to be met with by the young student."—*Educational Times*.

"Just the book to be put into the hands of boys who are reading Greek plays. They are

carefully and judiciously edited, and form the most valuable aid to the study of the elements of Greek that we have seen for many a day. The Grammatical Indices are especially to be commended."—*Athenæum*.

"These editions afford exactly the kind of help that school-boys require, and are really excellent class-books. The notes, though very brief, are of much use and always to the point, and the arguments and arrangement of the text are equally good in their way."—*Standard*.

"Not professing to give whole dramas, with their customary admixture of iambics, trochaics, and choral odes, as pabulum for learners who can barely digest the level speeches and dialogues commonly confined to the first-named metre, he has arranged extracted scenes with much tact and skill, and set them before the pupil with all needful information in the shape of notes at the end of the book; besides which he has added a somewhat novel, but highly commendable and valuable feature—namely, appropriate headings to the commencement of each scene, and appropriate stage directions during its progress."—*Saturday Review*.

"These are attractive little books, novel in design and admirable in execution. . . . It would hardly be possible to find a better introduction to Aristophanes for a young student than these little books afford."

London Quarterly Review.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

Homer for Beginners.

ILIAD, Books I.—III. With English Notes.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Fourth Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

The Iliad of Homer.

From the Text of Dindorf. With Preface and Notes.

By S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A., *Fellow and Tutor of Brasenose College, Oxford.*

Books I.—XII. Crown 8vo. 6s.

Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."

The Iliad of Homer.

With English Notes and Grammatical References.

By THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

Fifth Edition. 12mo. Half-bound, 12s.

A Complete Greek and English Lexicon for the Poems of Homer and the Homeridæ.

By G. CH. CRUSIUS. *Translated from the German. Edited by*
T. K. ARNOLD, M.A.

New Edition. 12mo. 9s.

*In the Press, New Edition, re-arranged, with fresh Pieces and additional
References.*

Materials and Models for Greek Prose Composition.

Selected and arranged by J. Y. SARGENT, M.A., *Fellow and Tutor
of Magdalen College, Oxford; and* T. F. DALLIN, M.A., *Tutor, late
Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo.

(See Page 16.)

Greek Version of Selected Pieces from Materials and Models.

By J. Y. SARGENT, M.A.

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

[May be had by Tutors only, on direct application to the Publishers.]

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

Classical Examination Papers.

Edited, with Notes and References, by P. J. F. GANTILLON, M.A., sometime Scholar of St. John's College, Cambridge; Classical Master at Cheltenham College.

Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Or interleaved with writing-paper, half-bound, 10s. 6d.

Recommended in the *Guide to the Choice of Classical Books*, by J. B. Mayor, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature at King's College, late Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Demosthenes.

Edited, with English Notes and Grammatical References, by THOMAS KERCHER ARNOLD, M.A.

12mo.

OLYNTIAC ORATIONS. Third Edition. 3s.

PHILIPPIC ORATIONS. Third Edition. 4s.

ORATION ON THE CROWN. Second Edition. 4s. 6d.

Demosthenis Orationes Privatae.

Edited by ARTHUR HOLMES, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall.

Crown 8vo.

DE CORONA. 5s.

Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."

Demosthenis Orationes Publicae.

Edited by G. H. HESLOP, M.A., late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford; Head-Master of St. Bees.

Crown 8vo.

OLYNTIACS, 2s. 6d. } or, in One Volume, 4s. 6d.

PHILIPPICS, 3s.

DE FALSA LEGATIONE, 6s.

Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."

Isocratis Orationes.

Edited by JOHN EDWIN SANDYS, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Crown 8vo.

AD DEMONICUM ET PANEGYRICUS. 4s. 6d.

Forming a Part of the "Catena Classicorum."

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

The Greek Testament.

With a Critically Revised Text ; a Digest of Various Readings ; Marginal References to Verbal and Idiomatic Usage ; Prolegomena ; and a Critical and Exegetical Commentary. For the use of Theological Students and Ministers.

By HENRY ALFORD, D.D., *late Dean of Canterbury.*

New Edition. 4 vols. 8vo. 102s.

The Volumes are sold separately, as follows :

Vol. I.—THE FOUR GOSPELS. 28s.

Vol. II.—ACTS to 2 CORINTHIANS. 24s.

Vol. III.—GALATIANS to PHILEMON. 18s.

Vol. IV.—HEBREWS to REVELATION. 32s.

The Greek Testament.

With Notes, Introductions, and Index.

By CHR. WORDSWORTH, D.D., *Bishop of Lincoln ; formerly Canon of Westminster, and Archdeacon.*

New Edition. 2 vols. Impl. 8vo. 60s.

The Parts may be had separately, as follows :—

THE GOSPELS. 16s.

THE ACTS. 8s.

ST. PAUL'S EPISTLES. 23s.

GENERAL EPISTLES, REVELATION, and INDEX. 16s.

An Introduction to Aristotle's Ethics.

Books I.—IV. (Book X., c. vi.—ix. in an Appendix). With a Continuous Analysis and Notes. Intended for the use of Beginners and Junior Students.

By the Rev. EDWARD MOORE, B.D., *Principal of S. Edmund Hall, and late Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford.*

Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Aristotelis Ethica Nicomachea.

Edidit, emendavit, crebrisque locis parallelis e libro ipso, aliisque ejusdem Auctoris scriptis, illustravit JACOBUS E. T. ROGERS, A.M.

Small 8vo. 4s. 6d. Interleaved with writing-paper, half-bound. 6s.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

Sophocles.

With English Notes from SCHNEIDEWIN.

Edited by T. K. ARNOLD, M.A., ARCHDEACON PAUL, and HENRY BROWNE, M.A.

12mo.

AJAX. 3s. PHILOCTETES. 3s. CÆDIPUS TYRANNUS. 4s. CÆDIPUS COLONEUS. 4s. ANTIGONE. 4s.

Sophoclis Tragoediae.

Edited by R. C. JEBB, M.A., Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Public Orator of the University.

Crown 8vo.

ELECTRA. Second Edition, revised. 3s. 6d.

AJAX. 3s. 6d.

Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."

Aristophanis Comoediae.

Edited by W. C. GREEN, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

Crown 8vo.

THE ACHARNIANS and THE KNIGHTS. 4s.

THE CLOUDS. 3s. 6d.

THE WASPS. 3s. 6d.

An Edition of "THE ACHARNIANS and THE KNIGHTS," revised and especially prepared for Schools. 4s.

Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."

Herodoti Historia.

Edited by H. G. WOODS, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Oxford.

Crown 8vo.

BOOK I. 6s. BOOK II. 5s.

Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

A Copious Phraseological English-Greek Lexicon.

Founded on a work prepared by J. W. FRÄDERSDORFF, Ph.D., late Professor of Modern Languages, Queen's College, Belfast.

Revised, Enlarged, and Improved by the late THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A., and HENRY BROWNE, M.A.

Fourth Edition. 8vo. 21s.

Thucydides Historia. Books I. and II.

Edited by CHARLES BIGG, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.

Crown 8vo. 6s.

Thucydides Historia. Books III. and IV.

Edited by G. A. SIMCOX, M.A., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.

Crown 8vo.

[In the Press.

Forming Parts of the "Catena Classicorum."



CATENA CLASSICORUM

A SERIES OF
CLASSICAL AUTHORS,

*Edited by Members of both Universities, under the direction of the Rev.
ARTHUR HOLMES, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College,
Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall;*

and

*The Rev. CHARLES BIGG, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ
Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.*

Crown 8vo.

Sophoclis Tragoediae.

*Edited by R. C. JEBB, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College,
Cambridge, and Public Orator of the University.*

THE ELECTRA. 3s. 6d. THE AJAX. 3s. 6d.

Juvenalis Satirae.

*By G. A. SIMCOX, M.A., Fellow and late Classical Lecturer of
Queen's College, Oxford.*

New Edition, revised and enlarged, 5s.

Thucydidis Historia.—Books I. & II.

*By CHARLES BIGG, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ
Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.* 6s.

Thucydidis Historia. — Books III. and IV.

By G. A. SIMCOX, M.A., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.

[Nearly ready.]

Demosthenis Orationes Publicae.

*By G. H. HESLOP, M.A., late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Queen's
College, Oxford; Head-Master of St. Bees.*

THE OLYNTHIACS. 2s. 6d.

THE PHILIPPICS. 3s.

DE FALSA LEGATIONE. 6s.

} or, in One Volume, 4s. 6d.

Demosthenis Orationes Privatae.

*By ARTHUR HOLMES, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare
College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall.*
DE CORONA. 5s.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

CATENA CLASSICORUM—continued.

Aristophanis Comoediae.

By W. C. GREEN, M.A., *late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge ; Assistant-Master at Rugby School.*

THE ACHARNIANS AND THE KNIGHTS. 4s.

THE WASPS. 3s. 6d. THE CLOUDS. 3s. 6d.

An Edition of THE ACHARNIANS AND THE KNIGHTS, revised and especially adapted for use in Schools. 4s.

Isocratis Orationes.

By JOHN EDWIN SANDYS, M.A., *Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Classical Lecturer at Jesus College, Cambridge.*

AD DEMONICUM ET PANEGYRICUS. 4s. 6d.

Persii Satirae.

By A. PRETOR, M.A., *Fellow of St. Catherine's College, Cambridge ; Classical Lecturer of Trinity Hall.*

3s. 6d.

Homeri Ilias.

By S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A., *late Fellow and Tutor of Brasenose College, Oxford.*

BOOKS I. TO XII. 6s.

Terenti Comoediae.

By T. L. PAPILLON, M.A., *Fellow of New College, Oxford ; late Fellow of Merton.*

ANDRIA ET EUNUCHUS. 4s. 6d.

Herodoti Historia.

By H. G. WOODS, M.A., *Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Oxford.*

BOOK I., 6s. BOOK II., 5s.

Horati Opera.

By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., *Under-Master of Dulwich College, late Fellow and Lecturer of Brasenose College, Oxford.*

VOL. I. — THE ODES, CARMEN SECLARE, AND EPODES. 7s. 6d.

Taciti Historiae.

By W. H. SIMCOX, M.A., *Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.*

[*In the press.*]

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

DIVINITY

Manuals of Religious Instruction.

Edited by JOHN PILKINGTON NORRIS, M.A., Canon of Bristol,
Church Inspector of Training Colleges.

The Old Testament.

The New Testament.

The Prayer Book.

Each Book in Five Parts. Small 8vo. 1s. each Part.

Or in Three Volumes. 3s. 6d. each.

These Manuals are intended to supply a need of which all who have examined Pupil Teachers in Religious Knowledge must be aware. They are a response to very many applications which the Editor has received on the subject. Their scheme was framed after a careful comparison of the courses of religious instruction put forth in several dioceses in the last two years.

It will be seen that three text-books are provided for each of the five years of pupil-teachership—

One on the Old Testament;

One on the New Testament;

One on the Catechism and Liturgy.

In preparing the Manual on the Catechism and Liturgy, the Editor—guided in this by the Bishop of Lincoln's very complete syllabus for the Pupil Teachers of the Lincoln Diocese—thought it best to spread the study of the Catechism over several years, rather than compress it into one. This may give rise to what may appear some needless repetition. But the Lessons of our Catechism are of such paramount importance, that it seems desirable to keep it continually in our Pupil Teachers' hands, as the best key to the study of the Prayer Book.

There has been a grievous want of *definiteness* in our Pupil Teachers' knowledge of Church doctrine. Nearly all the Diocesan Inspectors have noticed it. It has arisen, doubtless, from their Teachers assuming that they had clear elementary ideas about religion, in which really they had never been grounded. It is therefore thought not too much to ask them to give one third of their time to the study of the Prayer Book.

In the Old Testament and New Testament Manuals the greatest pains have been taken to give them such a character as shall render it impossible for them to supersede the Sacred Text. Two main objects the writers of the Old and New Testament Manuals have proposed to themselves; first, to stimulate interest; second, to supply a sort of running commentary on the inspired page. Especial pains have been taken to draw the Pupil Teacher's attention to the *spiritual* teaching of Holy Scripture, and to subordinate to this the merely historical interest.

The writer of the Old Testament Manual has made it his endeavour—in this also following the excellent suggestions of the Bishop of Lincoln's letter to his Diocesan Inspectors—to help the reader to see our Lord Christ in Law, in Psalms, in Prophets.

The New Testament Manual is confined to the Gospels and Acts. It was found impossible to include any of the Epistles. And all who are charged with the instruction of Pupil Teachers seemed to deprecate it.

Although they were prepared with special regard to Pupil Teachers they may be found adapted also for all students of a like age (from thirteen to eighteen) who have not access to many books.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

*A Catechism for Young Children,
Preparatory to the Use of the Church
Catechism.*

By JOHN PILKINGTON NORRIS, M.A., *Canon of Bristol.*

Small 8vo. 2d.

A Companion to the Old Testament.

Being a plain Commentary on Scripture History down to the Birth
of our Lord.

Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Also in Two Parts :

Part I.—The Creation of the World to the Reign of Saul.

Part II.—The Reign of Saul to the Birth of Our Lord.

Small 8vo. 2s. each.

[Especially adapted for use in Training Colleges and Schools.]

"A very compact summary of the Old Testament narrative, put together so as to explain the connection and bearing of its contents, and written in a very good tone ; with a final chapter on the history of the Jews between the Old and New Testa-

ments. It will be found very useful for its purpose. It does not confine itself to merely chronological difficulties, but comments freely upon the religious bearing of the text also."—*Guardian*.

A Companion to the New Testament.

Small 8vo.

[In the Press.

*The Young Churchman's Companion
to the Prayer-Book.*

Part I.—Morning and Evening Prayer and Litany.

By the Rev. J. W. GEDGE, M.A., *Diocesan Inspector of Schools for
the Archdeaconry of Surrey.*

Recommended by the late LORD BISHOP OF WINCHESTER.

18mo. 1s., or in Paper Cover, 6d.

Part II.—Baptismal and Confirmation Services.

[In the Press.

A Manual of Confirmation.

With a Pastoral Letter instructing Catechumens how to prepare themselves for their First Communion.

By EDWARD MEYRICK GOULBURN, D.D., *Dean of Norwich.*

Ninth Edition. Small 8vo. 1s. 6d.

The Way of Life.

A Book of Prayers and Instruction for the Young at School. With a Preparation for Holy Communion.

Compiled by a Priest. Edited by the Rev. T. T. CARTER, M.A., Rector of Clewer, Berks.

16mo, 1s. 6d.

The Lord's Supper.

By THOMAS WILSON, D.D., *late Lord Bishop of Sodor and Man.*

Complete Edition, with red borders, 16mo. 2s. 6d.

Also a Cheap Edition, without red borders, 1s.; or in paper cover, 6d.

Household Theology.

A Handbook of Religious Information respecting the Holy Bible, the Prayer Book, the Church, the Ministry, Divine Worship, the Creeds, &c., &c.

By the Rev. JOHN HENRY BLUNT, M.A.

New Edition. Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

Keys to Christian Knowledge.

Small 8vo. 2s. 6d. each.

"Of cheap and reliable text-books of this nature there has hitherto been a great want. We are often asked to recommend books for use in Church Sunday schools, and we therefore take this opportunity of saying that we know of none more likely to be of service both to teachers and scholars than these *Keys*." — *Churchman's Shilling Magazine*.

"Will be very useful for the higher classes in Sunday schools, or rather for the fuller instruction of the Sunday-school teachers themselves, where the parish Priest is wise enough to devote a certain time regularly to their preparation for their voluntary task." — *Union Review*.

By J. H. BLUNT, M.A., *Editor of the Annotated Book of Common Prayer.*

THE HOLY BIBLE.

THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER.

THE CHURCH CATECHISM.

CHURCH HISTORY, ANCIENT.

CHURCH HISTORY, MODERN.

By JOHN PILKINGTON NORRIS, M.A., *Canon of Bristol.*

THE FOUR GOSPELS.

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

MISCELLANEOUS

The Campaigns of Napoleon.

The Text (in French) from M. THIERS' "Histoire du Consulat et de l'Empire," and "Histoire de la Révolution Française." Edited, with English Notes, for the use of Schools, by EDWARD E. BOWEN, M.A., Master of the Modern Side, Harrow School.

With Maps. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d. each.

ARCOLA.

MARENGO.

JENA.

WATERLOO.

[*New Ready.*

[*In the Press.*

Selections from Modern French Authors.

Edited, with English Notes and Introductory Notice, by HENRI VAN LAUN, Translator of Taine's HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. each.

HONORÉ DE BALZAC.

H. A. TAINÉ.

The First French Book.

By T. K. ARNOLD, M.A.

Sixth Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. Key, 2s. 6d.

The First German Book.

By T. K. ARNOLD, M.A., and J. W. FRÄDERSDORFF, Ph.D.

Seventh Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. Key, 2s. 6d.

The First Hebrew Book.

By T. K. ARNOLD, M.A.

Fourth Edition. 12mo. 7s. 6d. Key, 3s. 6d.

The Choristers' Guide.

By W. A. BARRETT, Mus. Bac., Oxon, of St. Paul's Cathedral,
Author of "Flowers and Festivals."

Second Edition. Square 16mo. 2s. 6d.

LONDON, OXFORD, AND CAMBRIDGE.

Now, while the drowsy world lies lost in sleep,
Let me associate with the serious night,
And contemplation, her sedate compeer ;
Let me shake off the intrusive cares of day,
And lay the meddling senses all aside.

Where now, ye lying vanities of life !
Ye ever-tempting, ever-cheating train !
Where are you now ? and what is your amount ?
Vexation, disappointment, and remorse ;
Sad, sickening thought ! and yet deluded man,
A scene of crude disjointed visions past,
And broken slumbers, rises still resolved,
With new-flushed hopes, to run the giddy round.

210

Father of light and life ! thou Good Supreme !
O teach me what is good ; teach me Thyself !
Save me from folly, vanity, and vice,
From every low pursuit ; and feed my soul
With knowledge, conscious peace, and virtue pure—
Sacred, substantial, never-fading bliss !

220

The keener tempests come ; and fuming dun
From all the livid east, or piercing north,
Thick clouds ascend ; in whose capacious womb
A vapoury deluge lies, to snow congealed.
Heavy they roll their fleecy world along :
And the sky saddens with the gathered storm.
Through the hushed air the whitening shower descends,
At first thin-wavering ; till at last the flakes
Fall broad, and wide, and fast, dimming the day
With a continual flow. The cherished fields
Put on their winter robe of purest white.

230

'Tis brightness all ; save where the new snow melts
Along the mazy current. Low, the woods
Bow their hoar head ; and, ere the languid sun,
Faint from the west, emits his evening ray,
Earth's universal face, deep-hid and chill,
Is one wild dazzling waste, that buries wide
The works of man. Drooping, the labourer-ox
Stands covered o'er with snow, and then demands
The fruit of all his toil. The fowls of heaven,
Tamed by the cruel season, crowd around
The winnowing store, and claim the little boon
Which Providence assigns them. One alone,
The redbreast, sacred to the household gods,

240

187 *Thatched*. Properly speaking covered, now applied to one form of covering. A. S. 'Theccan,' to cover. German, 'dach,' a roof, 'decken,' to cover. Latin, 'tego,' to cover, 'tectum,' a house. Greek, στέγειν, to cover, στέγη, a roof.

191 An appeal to imagination and superstition. To heighten the horrors of the scene, and the misery of the wanderer's position.

195 *Lords it*. It, used impersonally and generally. Cf. the frequent use of 'le' and 'en' in French: En être, l'en porter, &c.

197, 198 Psalm clv. Milton, *Paradise Lost*, ii. 263.

The hush in the storm at nightfall gives opportunity for thought (202). *Moral reflections* (209). *Prayer for guidance* (216)

202 *The weary clouds*. An instance of the pathetic fallacy: the closing in of clouds into night (not a very true description) occurs already in line 79.

206 *Compeer*. Cum-par. So pair; disparage, which means to move from a state of equality.

209 *Ye*. Used properly only in the nominative and vocative.

210 *Ever-cheating*. Fr. 'échoir,' to fall. Eng. 'escheat.' 'Escheaters,' the officers who secured for the Crown properties falling to it—an odious office, equivalent to pettifoggers and rascals. So to cheat.

211 *Amount*. What do you come to after all.

214 *Crude*. Raw, undigested, therefore unassimilated.

216 *New-flushed*. Filled with new vitality, connected with Ger. 'fluss,' a river. Primary sense, 'flow,' so a flow of blood flushes the cheek. You flush a drain; a river is flush or level with its bank.

219 *Folly*. Fr. 'fol' or 'fou.' Welsh, 'ffol.' Cf. Ps. cxviii. in old psalter of Corbie, quoted in Renouard, 'De tes commandemens ne foliait,' 'I have not wandered from thy commandments.' Cf. Fr. 'feu follet,' Will-o'-the-wisp.

221 *Conscious*. Here = of conscience. Contrast with use in line 133.

Return to the subject. The third form of storm, snow (223): *its effects on the animal creation* (240); *on flocks in a snow-drift* (265). *The peasant lost amid the snow-drifts* (276).

224 *Livid, piercing*. Epithets appealing to different senses are not well used thus coupled.

228 *Saddens*. Observe how constantly, in English, verbs are used in both active and neuter sense.

229 *Whitening*. Cf. 140.

232 *Cherished* = carefully tended. Fr. 'chér.' dear.

that religion itself is made ridiculous. To this we would answer, that it is not reality and sincerity in religion which Molière attacks, but unreality and hypocrisy, and that such vices are legitimate objects of moral satire. There were plenty of Tartufes in the Paris of Molière's day, and the piece is but another campaign of that war Pascal had waged eleven years before. The mode of warfare and plan of attack of the two men were indeed diverse; and Pascal in his cloister fought as a fervent Catholic, whilst Molière, a pupil of Gassendi, came into the field an unbiassed philosopher; yet the powers of both were directed unconsciously to the same end, that of stripping the irreligious and hypocritical of their assumed garb of holiness.

Molière's glory is that he was the poet of human nature. He was the first of his age to attack with that weapon most terrible of all to Frenchmen—ridicule—the follies of his day, and his personifications of vice and weakness are true for all time, types of which every age will furnish antitypes.

Boileau replied to Louis XIV.'s question who was the greatest poet of the age? "*C'est Molière,*" and the admiration of succeeding generations has gone far to endorse this opinion. His countrymen claim for him the first place amongst comic poets, and there is little doubt that he outdid his model Plautus, and at least disputes the pre-eminence with Terence.

Boileau.—Boileau, whom we have just mentioned deciding for the king on the comparative merits of rival poets, set himself the task of guiding public taste generally. Before he rose up to judge with his critical good sense between bad and good, Scudéry had been admired by the side of Corneille, and Voiture by that of Malherbe. The end of Mademoiselle de Scudéry's long life

thus: if the articles had cost £1 each, the total cost would have been £2478;

∴ as they cost $\frac{1}{2}$ of £1 each, the cost will be £2478, or £413.

The process may be written thus:

3s. 4d. is $\frac{1}{2}$ of £1 | £2478 = cost of the articles at £1 each.

£413 = cost at 3s. 4d. ...

Ex. (2). Find the cost of 2897 articles at £2. 12s. 9d. each.

£2 is $2 \times$ £1 | 2897 . 0 . 0 = cost at £1 each.

10s. is $\frac{1}{2}$ of £1 | 5794 . 0 . 0 = £2

2s. is $\frac{1}{5}$ of 10s. | 1448 . 10 . 0 = 10s.

8d. is $\frac{1}{3}$ of 2s. | 289 . 14 . 0 = 2s.

1d. is $\frac{1}{8}$ of 8d. | 96 . 11 . 4 = 8d.

12 . 1 . 5 = 1d.

£7640 . 16 . 9 = £2. 12s. 9d. each.

NOTE.—A shorter method would be to take the parts thus:

10s. = $\frac{1}{2}$ of £1; 2s. 6d. = $\frac{1}{4}$ of 10s.; 3d. = $\frac{1}{10}$ of 2s. 6d.

Ex. (3). Find the cost of 425 articles at £2. 18s. 4d. each.

Since £2. 18s. 4d. is the difference between £3 and 1s. 8d. (which is $\frac{1}{12}$ of £1), the shortest course is to find the cost at £3 each, and to *subtract from it* the cost at 1s. 8d. each, thus:

£3 is $3 \times$ £1 | £ 425 . 0 . 0 = cost at £1 each.

1s. 8d. is $\frac{1}{12}$ of £1 | 1275 . 0 . 0 = £3
35 . 8 . 4 = 1s. 8d. each.

£1239 . 11 . 8 = £2. 18s. 4d. each

of all of them open by two slits turned towards the centre of the flower. Their stalks have expanded and joined together, so as to form a thin sheath round the central column (fig. 12). The dust-



Fig. 12.

Dust-spikes of gorse (*enlarged*).

spikes are so variable in length in this flower, that it may not be possible to see that one short one comes between two long ones, though this ought to be the case.

The *seed-organ* is in the form of a longish rounded pod, with a curved neck, stretching out beyond the dust-spikes. The top of it is sticky, and if you look at a bush of gorse, you will see it projecting beyond the keel in most of the fully-blown flowers, because the neck has become more curved than in fig. 12. Cut open the pod; it contains only one cavity (not, as that of the wall-flower, two separated by a thin partition), and the grains are suspended by short cords from the top (fig. 13). These grains may be plainly seen in the seed-organ of even a young flower. It is evident that they are the most important part of the plant, as upon them depends its diffusion and multiplication. We have already seen how carefully their well-being is considered in the matter of their perfection, how even insects are pressed into their service for this purpose! Now let us glance again at our flower, and see how wonderfully contrivance is heaped upon contrivance for their protection!



Fig. 13.

Split seed-pod of gorse.

First (see fig. 10, p. 14), we have the outer covering, so covered with hairs, that it is as good for keeping out rain as a waterproof cloak; in the buttercup, when you pressed the bud, it separated into five leaves; here there are five leaves, just the same, but they are so tightly joined that you may press till the whole bud is bent without making them separate at all, and when the bud is older, they only separate into two, and continue to enfold the flower to a certain extent till it fades. When the flower pushes back its waterproof cloak, it has the additional shelter of the big

Sometimes carbonic anhydride is produced in wells, and, being so much heavier than air, it remains at the bottom. If a man goes down into such a well, he will have no difficulty at first, because the air is good; but when he is near the bottom, where the gas has accumulated, he will gasp for breath and fall; and if anyone, not understanding the cause of his trouble, goes down to assist him, he too will fall senseless, and both will quickly die. The way to ascertain whether carbonic anhydride has accumulated at the bottom of a well is to let a light down into it. If it goes out, or even burns very dimly, there is enough of the gas to make the descent perilous. A man going down a well should always take a candle with him, which he should hold a considerable distance below his mouth. If the light burns dimly, he should at once stop, before his mouth gets any lower and he takes some of the gas into his lungs.

When this gas is in a well or pit, of course it must be expelled before a man can descend. There are several expedients for doing this. One is to let a bucket down frequently, turning it upside down, away from the mouth of the well, every time it is brought up, a plan which will remind you of the experiment represented in Fig. 24.

But a better way is to let down a bundle of burning straw or shavings, so as to heat the gas. Now heated bodies expand, gases very much more than solids or liquids, and, in expanding, the weight of a certain volume, say of a gallon, becomes lessened. So that if we can heat the carbonic anhydride enough to make a gallon of it weigh less than a gallon of air, it will rise out of the well just as hydrogen gas would do. Fig. 25 shows how you may perform this experiment upon a small scale.



DISASTROUS RETREAT OF THE ENGLISH FROM CABUL.

IT took two days of disorder, suffering, and death to carry the army, now an army no more, to the jaws of the fatal pass. Akbar Khan, who appeared like the Greeks' dread marshal from the spirit-land at intervals upon the route, here demanded four fresh hostages. The demand was acquiesced in. Madly along the narrow defile crowded the undistinguishable host, whose diminished numbers were still too numerous for speed: on every side rang the war-cry of the barbarians: on every side plundered and butchered the mountaineers: on every side, palsied with fatigue, terror, and cold, the soldiers dropped down to rise no more. The next day, in spite of all remonstrance, the general halted his army, expecting in vain provisions from Akbar Khan. That day the ladies, the children, and the married officers were given up. The march was resumed. By the following night not more than one-fourth of the original number survived. Even the haste which might once have saved now added nothing to the chances of life. In the middle of the pass a barrier was prepared. There twelve officers died sword in hand. A handful of the bravest or the strongest only reached the further side alive: as men hurry for life, they hurried on their way, but were surrounded and cut to pieces, all save a few that had yet escaped. Six officers better mounted or more fortunate than the rest, reached a spot within sixteen miles of the goal: but into the town itself rode painfully on a jaded steed, with the stump of a broken sword in his hand, but one.

LIVY, *xxi. c. 25, § 7-10. xxxv. c. 30. xxiii. c. 24.*

CÆSAR, *Bell. Gall. v. c. 35-37.*

DEFEAT OF CHARLES THE BOLD AND MASSACRE OF HIS TROOPS AT MORAT.

IN such a predicament braver soldiers might well have ceased to struggle. The poor wretches, Italians and Savoyards, six thousand or more in number, threw away their arms and made

INDEX

	PAGE		PAGE
HISTORY	7	LATIN	14
ENGLISH	6	GREEK	18
MATHEMATICS	9	CATENA CLASSICORUM	26
SCIENCE	12	DIVINITY	28
MISCELLANEOUS		31	
	PAGE		PAGE
ABBOTT (Evelyn), Selections from Lucian	18	Bridge (C.), History of French Literature	3
Elements of Greek Acci- dence	18	Bright (J. Franck), English History History of the	1
Alford (Dean), Greek Testament	23	French Revolution	4
Anson (W. R.), Age of Chatham	4	Browning (Oscar), Great Rebellion	4
Age of Pitt	4	Historical Hand- books	2-4
Aristophanes, by W. C. Green	24, 27	CALVERT (E.), Selections from Livy Child's Catechism, by Canon Norris	15 29
Scenes from, by Arthur Sidgwick	20	Companion to the New Testament	29
Aristotle's Ethics, by Edward Moore	23	Companion to the Old Testament	29
by J. E. T. Rogers	23	Cornelius Nepos, by T. K. Arnold	15
Arnold (T. K.), Cornelius Nepos	15	Crake (A. D.), History of the Church	5
Crusius' Homeric Lexicon	21	Creighton (M.), Historical Bio- graphies	5
Demosthenes	22	Crusius' Homeric Lexicon, by T. K. Arnold	21
Eclogæ Ovidianæ	16	Curteis (A. M.), The Roman Empire	3
English-Greek Lexi- con	25	DALLIN (T. F.) and Sargent (J. Y.), Materials and Models, &c.	16, 21
English Prose Com- position	8	Davys (Bishop), History of England Demosthenes, by T. K. Arnold	5 22
First French Book	31	by G. H. Heslop	22, 26
First German Book	31	by Arthur Holmes	22, 26
First Greek Book	31	ENGLISH SCHOOL CLASSICS, Edited by Francis Storr	6, 7
First Hebrew Book	31	Euclid, by J. Hamblin Smith	10
First Verse Book	15	Euripides, Scenes from, by Arthur Sidgwick	20
Greek Accidence	19	FOSTER (George Carey), Electricity Sound	12 12
Greek Prose Com- position	29	Frädersdorf (J. W.) English-Greek Lexicon	25
Henry's First Latin Book	15	GANTILLON (P. G. F.), Classical Ex- amination Papers	17, 22
Homer for Beginners	21	Gedge (J. W.), Young Churchman's Companion to the Prayer Book	29
Homer's Iliad	21	Gepp (C. G.), Latin Elegiac Verse	15
Latin Prose Com- position	15	Girdlestone (W. H.), Arithmetic	11
Madvig's Greek Syn- tax	19	Goulburn (Dean), Manual of Con- firmation	29
Sophocles	24	Greek Testament, by Dean Alford	23
BARRETT (W. A.), Chorister's Guide Beasley (R. D.), Arithmetic	31 11	by Chr. Wordsworth	23
Bigg (Ch.), Exercises in Latin Prose Thucydides	14 25, 26	Green (W. C.), Aristophanes	24, 27
Blunt (J. H.), Household Theology Keys to Christian Knowledge	30 30	Gross (E. J.), Algebra, Part II.	10
Key to the Holy Bible the Prayer Book	30	Kinematics and Ki- netics	10
Church His- tory (Ancient)	30	Herodotus (Stories from), by J. Surtees Phillpotts	19
Church His- tory (Modern)	30	by H. G. Woods	24, 27
Church Cate- chism	30	Heslop (G. H.), Demosthenes	22, 26
Bowen (E. E.), Campaigns of Napo- leon	31		

INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
Historical Biographies, edited by M. Creighton	5	Rigg (Arthur), Science Class-books	12
Historical Handbooks, Edited by Oscar Browning	2-4	Rivington's Mathematical Series . .	9
Holmes (Arthur), Demosthenes	22, 26	Rogers (J. E. T.), Aristotle's Ethics	23
Rules for Latin Pronunciation	14	SANDYS (J. E.), Isocrates	22, 27
Homer for Beginners, by T. K. Arnold	21	Sargent (J. Y.) and Dallin (T. F.), Materials and Models, &c.	16, 21
Homer's Iliad, by T. K. Arnold	21	Greek Version of Selected Pieces	21
by S. H. Reynolds	21, 27	Latin Version of (60) Selected Pieces	16
Horace, by J. M. Marshall	17, 27	Saward (R.), Selections from Livy . .	15
IOPHON	19	Science Class Books	12
Isocrates, by J. E. Sandys	22, 27	Shakspeare's As You Like It, Macbeth, and Hamlet, by C. E. Moberly	8
JEBB (R. C.), Sophocles	24, 26	Coriolanus, by R. White-law	8
Supremacy of Athens	4	Tempest, by J. S. Phillpotts	8
Juvenal, by G. A. Simcox	17, 26	Sidgwick (Arthur), Scenes from Greek Plays	20
KEYS TO CHRISTIAN KNOWLEDGE	30	Introduction to Greek Prose Composition	18
Kitchener (F. E.), Botany for Class Teaching	12	Simcox (G. A.), Juvenal	17, 26
(Frances Anna), a Year's Botany	13	Thucydides	25, 26
LATIN PRONUNCIATION, Rules for, by Arthur Holmes	14	Simcox (W. H.), Tacitus	17, 27
Latin Sentence Construction	14	Smith (J. H.), Arithmetic	10
Laun (Henri Van), French Selections	21	Key to Arithmetic	10
Laverty's (W. H.), Astronomy	12	Elementary Algebra	10
Livy, Selections from, by R. Saward and E. Calvert	15	Key to Elementary Algebra	10
Lucian, by Evelyn Abbott	18	Enunciations	11
MADWIC'S GREEK SYNTAX, by T. K. Arnold	19	Exercises on Algebra	10
Mansfield (E. D.), Latin Sentence Construction	14	Hydrostatics	11
Manuals of Religious Instruction, edited by J. P. Norris	28	Geometry	10
Marshall (J. M.), Horace	17, 27	Statics	11
Moberly (Charles E.), Shakspeare . .	8	Trigonometry	11
Alexander the Great in the Punjab	18	(Philip V.), History of English Institutions	2
Moore (Edward), Aristotle's Ethics . .	23	(R. Prowde), Latin Prose Exercises	14
NORRIS (J. P.), Key to the Four Gospels	30	Sophocles, by T. K. Arnold	24
to the Acts of the Apostles	30	by R. C. Jebb	24, 26
Manuals of Religious Instruction	28	Storr (Francis), English School Classics	6, 7
Child's Catechism	29	English Grammar	8
OVIDIANÆ ECLOGÆ, by T. K. Arnold	16	Greek Verbs	18
PAPILLON (T. L.), Terence	17, 27	TACITUS, by W. H. Simcox	17, 27
Pearson (Charles), English History in the XIV. Century	3	Terence, by T. L. Papillon	17, 27
Pelham (H. F.), The Roman Revolution	4	Thiers' Campaigns of Napoleon, by E. E. Bowen	31
Phillpotts (J. Surtees), Stories from Herodotus	19	Thucydides, by C. Bigg	25, 26
Shakspeare's Tempest	8	by G. A. Simcox	25, 26
Pretor (A.), Persil Satiræ	17, 27	WAY OF LIFE	30
REYNOLDS (S. H.), Homer's Iliad . . .	21, 27	Whitelaw (Robert), Shakspeare's Coriolanus	8
Richardson (G.), Comic Sections . .	11	Willert (F.), Reign of Louis XI. . . .	4
Rigg (Arthur), Introduction to Chemistry	13	Wilson (R. K.), History of English Law	3
		Wilson's Lord's Supper	30
		Woods (H. G.), Herodotus	24, 27
		Wordsworth (Bp.), Greek Testament	23
		Young (Sir G.), History of the United States	4

Select Plays of Shakspeare

RUGBY EDITION. With an Introduction and Notes to each Play. Small 8vo.

As You Like It. 2s. ; paper cover, 1s. 6d.

Edited by the Rev. Charles E. Moberly, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford.

Macbeth. 2s. ; paper cover, 1s. 6d.

Edited by the same.

Coriolanus. 2s. 6d. ; paper cover, 2s.

Edited by Robert Whitelaw, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

Hamlet. 2s. 6d. ; paper covers, 2s.

Edited by the Rev. Charles E. Moberly, M.A.

The Tempest. [In preparation.]

Edited by J. Surtees Phillpotts, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, formerly Fellow of New College, Oxford.

Much Ado about Nothing. [In preparation.]

Edited by the same.

* * * Other Plays are in Preparation.

Scenes from Greek Plays

RUGBY EDITION. Abridged and Adapted for the use of Schools, by Arthur Sidgwick, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School, and formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

Aristophanes.

THE CLOUDS. THE FROGS. THE KNIGHTS. PLUTUS.

Euripides.

IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. THE CYCLOPS. ION.
ELECTRA.

Small 8vo 1s. 6d. each ; paper cover, 1s.

* * * Other Plays are in Preparation.

• Biddingtons • London • Oxford • Cambridge •

Catena Classicorum

A Series of Classical Authors. Edited by Members of both Universities, under the Direction of the Rev. Arthur Holmes, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall; and the Rev. Charles Bigg, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.

Sophoclis Tragoediae.

THE ELECTRA, 3s. 6d. THE AJAX, 3s. 6d.

Edited by R. O. Jebb, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Public Orator of the University.

Juvenalis Satirae.

Edited by G. A. Simcox, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer of Queen's College, Oxford. New Edition, revised. 5s.

Thucydidis Historia.

Edited by Chas. Bigg, M.A., late Senior Student and Tutor of Christ Church, Oxford; Principal of Brighton College.

Books I. and II., with Introductions. 6s.

Demosthenis Orationes Publicae.

THE OLYNTHIACS, 2s. 6d. THE PHILIPPICS, 3s. DE
FALSA LEGATIONE, 6s.

Edited by G. H. Heslop, M.A., late Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford; Head Master of St. Bees.

Aristophanis Comoediae.

THE ACHARNIANS and THE KNIGHTS, 4s. THE
CLOUDS, 3s. 6d. THE WASPS, 3s. 6d.

Edited by W. C. Green, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master at Rugby School.

An Edition of THE ACHARNIANS and THE KNIGHTS, Revised and especially adapted for Use in Schools. 4s.

Isocratis Orationes.

AD DEMONICUM ET PANEGYRICUS, 4s. 6d.

Edited by John Edwin Sandys, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of St. John's College, Classical Lecturer at Jesus College, Cambridge.

Persii Satirae.

Edited by A. Pretor, M.A., Fellow of St. Catherine's College, Cambridge, Classical Lecturer of Trinity Hall. 3s. 6d.

Homeri Ilias.

Edited by E. H. Reynolds, M.A., late Fellow and Tutor of Brasenose College, Oxford. Books I. to XII. 6s.

Terenti Comoediae.

ANDRIA ET EUNUCHUS, 4s. 6d.

Edited by T. L. Papillon, M.A., Fellow of New College, Oxford, late Fellow of Merton.

Demosthenis Orationes.

DE CORONA, 5s.

Edited by the Rev. Arthur Holmes, M.A., Senior Fellow and Dean of Clare College, Cambridge, and late Preacher at the Chapel Royal, Whitehall.

Herodoti Historia.

Edited by H. G. Woods, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Oxford.
Book I. 6s. Book II. 5s.

• Rivingtons • London • Oxford • Cambridge •

